

09/528,978

**PCT**WORLD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATION
International Bureau

INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(51) International Patent Classification ⁶: A61K 31/445, 31/435, 31/55, 31/40, 31/135, 31/675	A1	(11) International Publication Number: WO 96/14845 (43) International Publication Date: 23 May 1996 (23.05.96)
(21) International Application Number: PCT/IB95/00811 (22) International Filing Date: 29 September 1995 (29.09.95) (30) Priority Data: 08/336,955 10 November 1994 (10.11.94) US (71) Applicant (for all designated States except US): PFIZER INC. [US/US]: 235 East 42nd Street, New York, NY 10017 (US). (72) Inventor; and (75) Inventor/Applicant (for US only): HESS, Hans-Jurgen, Ernst [US/US]: 26 Jericho Drive, Old Lyme, CT 06371 (US). (74) Agents: SPIEGEL, Allen, J. et al.; Pfizer Inc., 235 East 42nd Street, New York, NY 10017 (US).		(81) Designated States: CA, JP, MX, US, European patent (AT, BE, CH, DE, DK, ES, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE). Published With international search report.
(54) Title: NK-1 RECEPTOR ANTAGONISTS FOR THE TREATMENT OF EYE DISORDERS (57) Abstract The present invention relates to a method of treating or preventing a disorder of the eye selected from glaucoma, ocular hypertension, miosis, excess lacrimation, hyperemia and breakdown of the blood aqueous barrier in mammals, including humans, using an NK-1 antagonist. It also relates to a method of treating or preventing such disorders in mammals, including humans, using certain quinuclidine derivatives, piperidine derivatives, pyrrolidine derivatives, azanobornane derivatives, ethylene diamine derivatives and related compounds that are substance P receptor antagonists. <div style="text-align: center; margin-top: 100px;"><i>Compound</i> <i>Page 22 of 152</i></div>		

FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

AT	Austria	GB	United Kingdom	MR	Mauritania
AU	Australia	GE	Georgia	MW	Malawi
BB	Barbados	GN	Guinea	NE	Niger
BE	Belgium	GR	Greece	NL	Netherlands
BF	Burkina Faso	HU	Hungary	NO	Norway
BG	Bulgaria	IE	Ireland	NZ	New Zealand
BJ	Benin	IT	Italy	PL	Poland
BR	Brazil	JP	Japan	PT	Portugal
BY	Belarus	KE	Kenya	RO	Romania
CA	Canada	KG	Kyrgyzstan	RU	Russian Federation
CF	Central African Republic	KP	Democratic People's Republic of Korea	SD	Sudan
CG	Congo	KR	Republic of Korea	SE	Sweden
CH	Switzerland	KZ	Kazakhstan	SI	Slovenia
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	LI	Liechtenstein	SK	Slovakia
CM	Cameroon	LK	Sri Lanka	SN	Senegal
CN	China	LU	Luxembourg	TD	Chad
CS	Czechoslovakia	LV	Latvia	TG	Togo
CZ	Czech Republic	MC	Monaco	TJ	Tajikistan
DE	Germany	MD	Republic of Moldova	TT	Trinidad and Tobago
DK	Denmark	MG	Madagascar	UA	Ukraine
ES	Spain	ML	Mali	US	United States of America
FI	Finland	MN	Mongolia	UZ	Uzbekistan
FR	France			VN	Viet Nam
GA	Gabon				

-1-

5

NK-1 RECEPTOR ANTAGONISTS
FOR THE TREATMENT OF EYE DISORDERS

The present invention relates to a method of treating or preventing a disorder of the eye selected from glaucoma, ocular hypertension, miosis, excess lacrimation, hyperemia and breakdown of the blood aqueous barrier in mammals, including humans, using an NK-1 antagonist. It also relates to a method of treating or preventing such disorders in mammals, including humans, using certain quinuclidine derivatives, piperidine derivatives, pyrrolidine derivatives, azanorbornane derivatives, ethylene diamine derivatives and related compounds that are substance P receptor antagonists.

The following references refer, collectively, to quinuclidine, piperidine, ethylene diamine, pyrrolidine and azanorbornane derivatives and related compounds that exhibit activity as substance P receptor antagonists: United States Patent 5,162,339, which issued on November 11, 1992; United States Patent 5,232,929, which issued on August 3, 1993; World Patent Application WO 92/20676, published November 26, 1992; World Patent Application WO 93/00331, published January 7, 1993; World Patent Application WO 92/21677, published December 10, 1992; World Patent Application WO 93/00330, published January 7, 1993; World Patent Application WO 93/06099, published April 1, 1993; World Patent Application WO 93/10073, published May 27, 1993; World Patent Application WO 92/06079, published April 16, 1992; World Patent Application WO 92/12151, published July 23, 1992; World Patent Application WO 92/15585, published September 17, 1992; World Patent Application WO 93/10073, published May 27, 1993; World Patent Application WO 93/19064, published September 30, 1993; World Patent Application WO 94/08997, published April 28, 1994; World Patent Application WO 94/04496, published March 3, 1994; United States Patent Application 988,653, filed December 10, 1992; United States Patent Application 026,382, filed March 4, 1993; United States Patent Application 123,306, filed

-2-

September 17, 1993, and United States Patent Application 072,629, filed June 4, 1993. All of the foregoing World Patent Applications designate the United States and were filed in the U.S. Receiving Office of the PCT. The
5 foregoing patents and patent applications are incorporated herein by reference in their entirety.

Beding-Barnekow et al. Br. J. Pharmacol. 95 (1), 259-67 (Sept. 1988) have reported that substance P is a mediator of miosis and breakdown of the blood aqueous barrier in rabbit
10 eyes. Mandahl, A., Eur. J. Pharmacol., 114 (2), 121-27 (1985) has reported that the substance P receptor antagonist (D-Argsup 1, D-prosup 2, D-Trpsup 7 sup, sup 9, Leusup 1 sup 1)SP inhibited miosis in rabbits caused by echothiophate iodide or pilocarpine hydrochloride.

15 Krupin et al., Exp. Eye Res., 34 (3) 319-24 (1982) have reported that the administration of substance P into the third ventricle of rabbits resulted in a dose dependent increase in interocular pressure.

Holmdahl et al., Science, 214 1029-1031 (1981) have
20 reported the results of studies which they state suggest that substance P or a related peptide is a neurogenic mediator of the inflammatory response in the eye, e.g., miosis (constriction of the pupil), hyperemia and breakdown of the blood aqueous barrier. Their studies showed that the
25 substance P antagonist [D-Pro², D-Trp^{7,9}]SP inhibited inflammatory responses in the rabbit eye.

Summary of the Invention

This invention relates to a method of treating or preventing a disorder of the eye selected from glaucoma,
30 ocular hypertension, miosis, hyperemia, excess lacrimation and breakdown of the blood aqueous barrier in a mammal, including a human, comprising administering to such mammal an amount of a substance P receptor antagonist that is effective in treating or preventing such disorder.

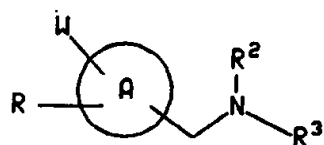
35 This invention also relates to a method of treating or preventing a disorder of the eye selected from glaucoma, ocular hypertension, miosis, hyperemia, excess lacrimation

-3-

and breakdown of the blood aqueous barrier in a mammal, including a human, comprising administering to such mammal an amount of a NK-1 receptor antagonist that is effective in treating or preventing such disorder.

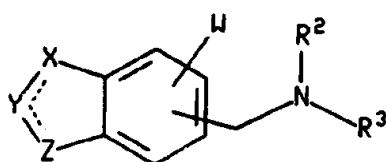
- 5 This invention also relates to a method of treating or preventing a disorder of the eye selected from glaucoma, and ocular hypertension, miosis, hyperemia, excess lacrimation and breakdown of the blood aqueous barrier in a mammal, including a human, comprising administering to said mammal
- 10 an amount of a compound of the formula

-4-



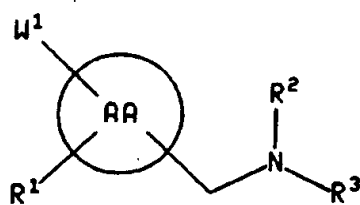
Ia

5



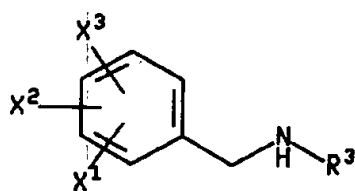
Ib

10



Ic

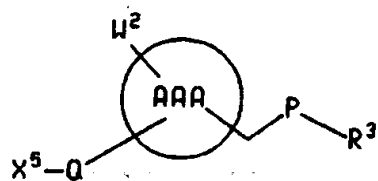
15



Id

20

25



Ie

30

-5-

wherein A is a ring system selected from phenyl, naphthyl, thienyl, quinoliny and indoliny, and wherein the sidechain containing NR^2R^3 is attached to a carbon atom of ring system A;

5 AA is an aryl group selected from phenyl, naphthyl, thienyl, dihydroquinoliny and indoliny, and wherein the sidechain containing NR^2R^3 is attached to a carbon atom of AA;

AAA is an aryl group selected from phenyl, naphthyl, 10 thienyl, dihydroquinoliny and indoliny, and wherein the $-\text{CH}_2\text{PR}^3$ sidechain is attached to a carbon atom of ring AAA;

P is NR^2 , O, S, SO or SO_2 ;

15 Q is SO_2 , NH, $-\text{N}(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}$ or $(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}-\text{N}-\text{SO}_2-$

wherein the point of attachment of said $(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}-\text{N}-\text{SO}_2-$ to ring AAA is the nitrogen atom and the point of attachment to X^5 is the sulfur atom;

20 W^1 is hydrogen, halo or (C_1-C_6) alkyl, $\text{S}-(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_3)\text{alkyl}$, halo or (C_1-C_6) alkoxy optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms;

W^2 is hydrogen, $(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}$, $\text{S}-(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_3)\text{alkyl}$, halo or $(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkoxy}$ optionally substituted with from one to three 25 fluorine atoms;

W is hydrogen, $(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}$ optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms, $-\text{S}(\text{O})_v-(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)$ alkyl wherein v is zero, one or two, halo or $(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkoxy}$ optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms;

30 X^1 is hydrogen, $(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_{10})$ alkoxy optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms or $(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_{10})$ alkyl optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms;

X^2 and X^3 are independently selected from hydrogen, 35 halo, nitro, $(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_{10})$ alkyl optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms, $(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_{10})$ alkoxy optionally

-6-

substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms, trifluoromethyl, hydroxy, phenyl, cyano, amino, (C₁-C₆)-

5 alkylamino, di-(C₁-C₆)alkylamino, $\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}\text{-C-NH-(C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{)alkyl}$, (C₁-C₆)-

10 $\text{alkyl-}\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}\text{-C-NH-(C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{)alkyl}$, hydroxy(C₁-C₄)alkyl, (C₁-C₄)alkoxy(C₁-

C₄)alkyl, $\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}\text{-NHCH}$ and $\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}\text{-NHC-(C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{)alkyl}$;

15 X^j is a four to six membered heterocyclic ring containing from one to three heteroatoms selected from sulfur, nitrogen and oxygen (e.g., thiazolyl, pyrrolyl, thienyl, triazolyl, oxazolyl, oxadiazolyl, thiadiazolyl or imidazolyl), wherein said heterocyclic ring may optionally
20 be substituted with from one to three substituents, preferably with from zero to two substituents, independently selected from phenyl, (C₁-C₆)alkyl optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms, (C₁-C₆)alkoxy optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms
25 and halo;

R is a 4, 5 or 6 membered heterocyclic ring containing from one to three heteroatoms selected from oxygen, nitrogen and sulfur (e.g., thiazolyl, azetidiny, pyrrolyl, pyrazolyl, 1,2,3-triazolyl, 1,2,4-triazolyl, isothiazolyl, 30 imidazolyl, isoxazolyl, or oxazolyl) wherein said heterocyclic ring may contain from zero to three double bonds and may optionally be substituted with one or more substituents, preferably one or two substituents, independently selected from (C₁-C₆)alkyl optionally
35 substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms and (C₁-C₆)alkoxy optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms;

R¹ is selected from amino, (C₁-C₆)alkylamino, di-(C₁-C₆)alkylamino, -S(O)_v-(C₁-C₁₀)-alkyl wherein v is zero, one or
40 two, -S(O)_v-aryl where in v is zero, one or two, -O-aryl, -SO₂NR⁴R⁵ wherein each of R⁴ and R⁵ is, independently, (C₁-

-7-

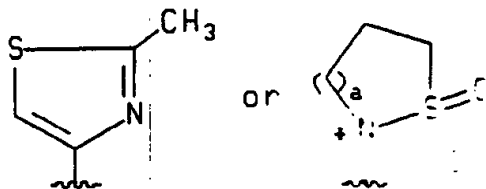
C₆)alkyl, or R⁴ and R⁵, together with the nitrogen to which they are attached, form a saturated ring containing one nitrogen and from 3 to 6

5 carbons, $\text{-NHC(=O)(C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{)alkyl}$, -NHCCF_3 , $(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_{10})\text{alkyl-N-SO}_2\text{-(C}_1\text{-C}_{10})\text{alkyl}$ wherein one or both of the alkyl moieties may optionally be substituted with from one to three fluorine

10 atoms, $\text{-N(SO}_2\text{-(C}_1\text{-C}_{10})\text{alkyl)}_2$ and $(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_{10})\text{alkyl-N-SO}_2\text{-aryl}$; and wherein the aryl moieties of said $\text{-S(O)}_v\text{-aryl}$, -O-aryl and

15 $(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_{10})\text{alkyl-N-SO}_2\text{-aryl}$ are independently selected from phenyl and benzyl and may optionally be substituted with from one to three substituents independently selected from $(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4)\text{alkyl}$, $(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4)\text{alkoxy}$ and halo;

20 or R¹ is a group having the formula



25 wherein a is 0, 1 or 2 and the asterisk represents a position meta to the R²R³NCH₂ side chain;

the dotted lines in formula Ib represent that one of the X-Y and Y-Z bonds may optionally be a double bond;

30 X is selected from =CH- , $\text{-CH}_2\text{-}$, -O- , -S- , -SO- , $\text{-SO}_2\text{-}$, $\text{-N(R}^4\text{)-}$, -NH- , =N- , $\text{-CH[(C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{)alkyl]-}$, $\text{=C[(C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{)alkyl]-}$, $\text{-CH(C}_6\text{H}_5\text{)-}$ and $\text{=C(C}_6\text{H}_5\text{)-}$;

Y is selected from C=O , C=NR^4 , C=S , =CH- , $\text{-CH}_2\text{-}$, $\text{=C[(C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{)alkyl]-}$, $\text{-CH[(C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{)alkyl]-}$, $\text{=C(C}_6\text{H}_5\text{)-}$, $\text{-CH(C}_6\text{H}_5\text{)-}$, =N- ,
 35 -NH- , $\text{-N(R}^4\text{)-}$, =C(halo)- , $\text{=C(OR}^4\text{)-}$, $\text{=C(SR}^4\text{)-}$, $\text{=C(NR}^4\text{)-}$, -O- , -S- and SO_2 , wherein the phenyl moieties of said $\text{=C(C}_6\text{H}_5\text{)-}$ and $\text{-CH(C}_6\text{H}_5\text{)-}$ may optionally be substituted with from one to three substituents independently selected from trifluoromethyl and halo, and wherein the alkyl moieties of

-8-

said $=[(C_1-C_6)\text{alkyl}]-$ and $-\text{CH}[(C_1-C_6)\text{alkyl}]-$ may optionally be substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms;

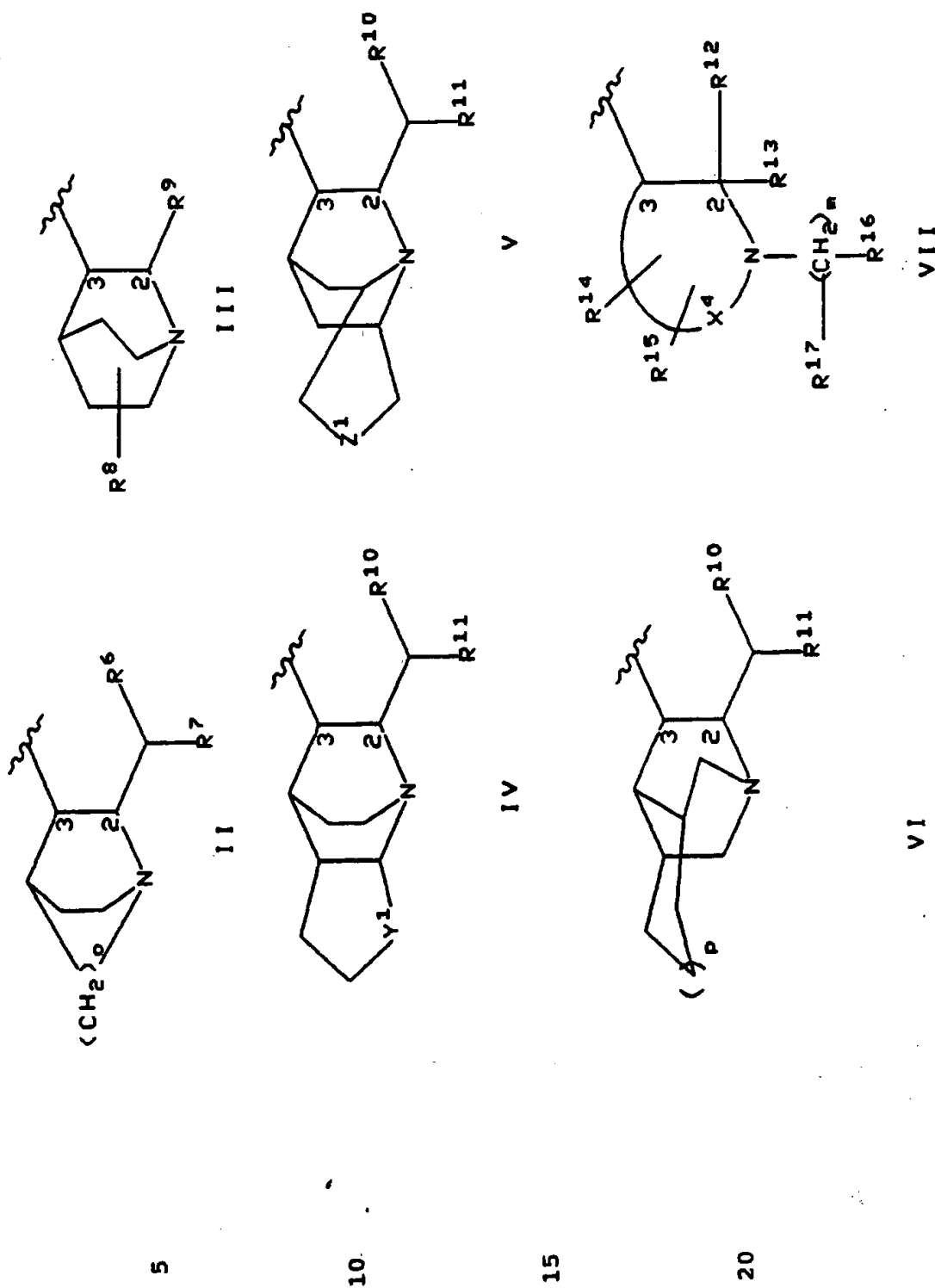
Z is selected from $=\text{CH}-$, $-\text{CH}_2-$, $=\text{N}-$, $-\text{NH}-$, $-\text{S}-$, $-\text{N}(\text{R}^4)-$, $=\text{C}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)-$, $-\text{CH}(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)-$, $=\text{C}[(C_1-C_6)\text{alkyl}]-$ and $-\text{CH}[(C_1-C_6)\text{alkyl}]-$;

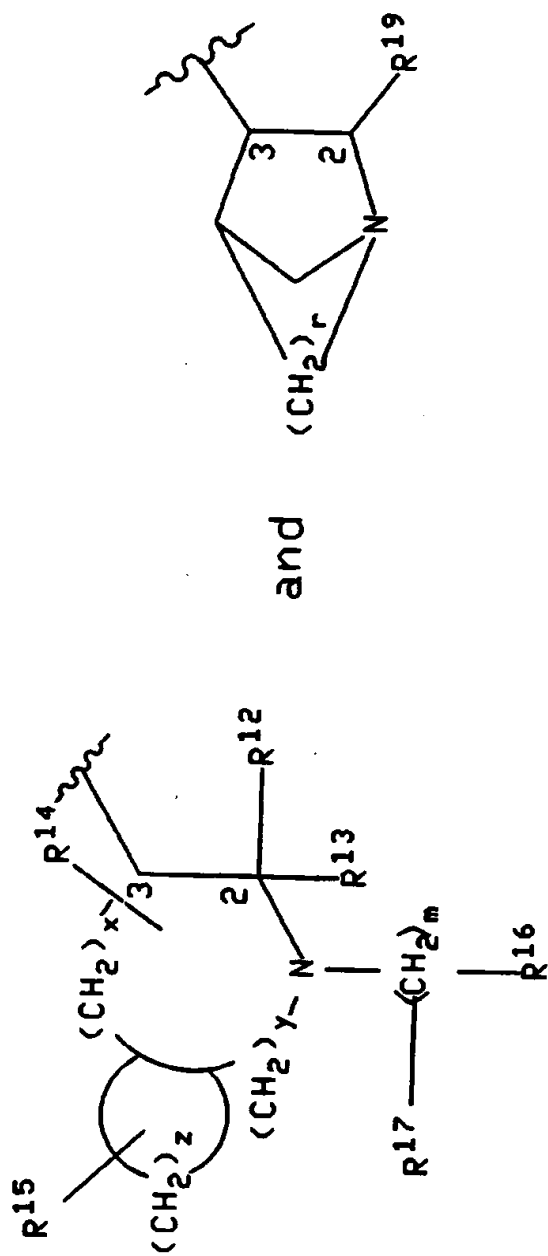
or X, Y and Z, together with the two carbon atoms shared between the benzo ring and the XYZ ring, form a fused pyridine or pyrimidine ring;

R^4 is (C_1-C_6) alkyl or phenyl;

R^2 is hydrogen or $-\text{CO}_2(C_1-C_{10})\text{alkyl}$;

R^3 is selected from



X
I

viii

-11-

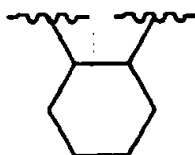
wherein R^6 and R^{10} are independently selected from furyl, thienyl, pyridyl, indolyl, biphenyl and phenyl, wherein said phenyl may optionally be substituted with one or two substituents independently selected from halo, (C_1-C_{10}) alkyl optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms, (C_1-C_{10}) alkoxy optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms, carboxy, benzyloxycarbonyl and (C_1-C_3) alkoxy-carbonyl;

R^7 is selected from (C_3-C_4) branched alkyl, (C_5-C_6) branched alkenyl, (C_5-C_7) cycloalkyl, and the radicals named in the definition of R^6 ;

R^8 is hydrogen or (C_1-C_6) alkyl;

R^9 and R^{10} are independently selected from phenyl, biphenyl, naphthyl, pyridyl, benzhydryl, thienyl and furyl, and R^9 and R^{10} may optionally be substituted with from one to three substituents independently selected from halo, (C_1-C_{10}) alkyl optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms and (C_1-C_{10}) alkoxy optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms;

Y^1 is $(CH_2)_1$, wherein 1 is an integer from one to three, or Y^1 is a group of the formula



(J)

25

Z^1 is oxygen, sulfur, amino, (C_1-C_3) alkylamino or $(CH_2)_n$, wherein n is zero, one or two;

x is an integer from zero to four;

30 y is an integer from zero to four;

z is an integer from one to six, wherein the ring containing $(CH_2)_z$ may contain from zero to three double bonds, and one of the carbons of $(CH_2)_z$ may optionally be replaced by oxygen, sulfur or nitrogen;

35 o is two or three;

p is zero or one;

-12-

r is one, two or three;

R¹¹ is thienyl, biphenyl or phenyl optionally substituted with one or two substituents independently selected from halo, (C₁-C₁₀) alkyl optionally substituted with
5 from one to three fluorine atoms and (C₁-C₁₀) alkoxy optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms;

X⁴ is (CH₂)_q, wherein q is an integer from 1 to 6, and wherein any one of the carbon-carbon single bonds in said
10 (CH₂)_q may optionally be replaced by a carbon-carbon double bond, and wherein any one of the carbon atoms of said (CH₂)_q may optionally be substituted with R¹⁴, and wherein any one of the carbon atoms of said (CH₂)_q may optionally be substituted with R¹⁵;

15 m is an integer from 0 to 8, and any one of the carbon-carbon single bonds of (CH₂)_m, wherein both carbon atoms of such bond are bonded to each other and to another carbon atom in the (CH₂)_m chain, may optionally be replaced by a carbon-carbon double bond or a carbon-carbon triple
20 bond, and any one of the carbon atoms of said (CH₂)_m may optionally be substituted with R¹⁷;

R¹² is a radical selected from hydrogen, (C₁-C₆) straight or branched alkyl, (C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl wherein one of the carbon atoms may optionally be replaced by nitrogen, oxygen
25 or sulfur; aryl selected from biphenyl, phenyl, indanyl and naphthyl; heteroaryl selected from thienyl, furyl, pyridyl, thiazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxazolyl, isoxazolyl, triazolyl, tetrazolyl and quinolyl; phenyl-(C₂-C₆)alkyl, benzhydryl and benzyl, wherein the point of attachment on R¹² is a carbon
30 atom unless R¹² is hydrogen, and wherein each of said aryl and heteroaryl groups and the phenyl moieties of said benzyl, phenyl-(C₂-C₆)alkyl and benzhydryl may optionally be substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from halo, nitro, (C₁-C₁₀)alkyl optionally
35 substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms, (C₁-C₁₀)alkoxy optionally substituted with

-13-

from one to three fluorine atoms, amino, hydroxy-(C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₁-C₆)alkoxy-(C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₁-C₆)-alkylamino,

5 (C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-C(=O)-, (C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-C(=O)-(C₁-C₆)alkyl,

10 (C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-O-, (C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-,

(C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-, (C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-,

15 di-(C₁-C₆)alkylamino, -C(=O)NH-(C₁-C₆)alkyl,

20 (C₁-C₆)-alkyl-C(=O)NH-(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -NHCH(=O) and -NHC(=O)-(C₁-C₆)alkyl;
and wherein one of the phenyl moieties of said benzhydryl may optionally be replaced by naphthyl, thienyl, furyl or pyridyl;

25 R¹³ is hydrogen, phenyl or (C₁-C₆)alkyl;

or R¹² and R¹³, together with the carbon to which they are attached, form a saturated carbocyclic ring having from 3 to 7 carbon atoms wherein one of said carbon atoms that is neither the point of attachment of the spiro ring nor adjacent to it may optionally be replaced by oxygen, nitrogen or sulfur;

30 R¹⁴ and R¹⁵ are each independently selected from hydrogen, hydroxy, halo, amino, oxo (=O), cyano, hydroxy-(C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₁-C₆)alkoxy-(C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₁-C₆)alkylamino,

35 di-(C₁-C₆)alkylamino, (C₁-C₆)alkoxy, -C(=O)OH,

40 (C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-C(=O)-, (C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-C(=O)-(C₁-C₆)alkyl,

45 (C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-O-, (C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-,

-14-

(C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-, (C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-, and the radicals
 5 set forth in the definition of R¹²;

R¹⁶ is NHCR¹⁸, NHCH₂R¹⁸, SO₂R¹⁸, GR²⁰ CO₂H or one of the
 10 radicals set forth in any of the definitions of R¹², R¹⁴ and R¹⁵;

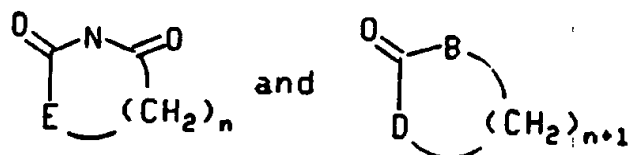
R¹⁷ is oximino (=NOH) or one of the radicals set forth
 in any of the definitions of R¹², R¹⁴ and R¹⁵; and

R¹⁸ is (C₁-C₆)alkyl, hydrogen, phenyl or phenyl (C₁-
 15 C₆)alkyl;

G is selected from the group consisting of CH₂,
 nitrogen, oxygen, sulfur and carbonyl;

R²⁰ is a monocyclic or bicyclic heterocycle selected
 from the group consisting of pyrimidinyl, benzoxazolyl,
 20 2,3-dihydro-3-oxobenzisulfonazol-2-yl, morpholin-1-yl,
 thiomorpholin-1-yl, benzofuranyl, benzothienyl, indolyl,
 isoindolyl, isoquinolyl, furyl, pyridyl, isothiazolyl,
 oxazolyl, triazolyl, tetrazolyl, quinolyl, thiazolyl,
 thienyl, and groups of the formulae

25



30

wherein B and D are selected from carbon, oxygen, and
 nitrogen, and at least one of B and D is other than carbon;
 E is carbon or nitrogen; n is an integer from 1 to 5; and
 any one of the carbons of the (CH₂)_n or (CH₂)_{n+1} may be
 35 optionally substituted with (C₁-C₆)alkyl or (C₂-C₆)
 spiroalkyl, and either any two of the carbon atoms of said
 (CH₂)_n and (CH₂)_{n+1} may be bridged by a one or two carbon atom
 linkage, or any one pair of adjacent carbons of said (CH₂)_n
 and (CH₂)_{n+1} may form together with from one to three carbon

-15-

atoms that are not members of the carbonyl containing ring, a (C₃-C₆) fused carbocyclic ring;

with the proviso that (a) when m is 0, one of R¹⁶ and R¹⁷ is absent and the other is hydrogen, (b) when R³ is a group of the formula VIII, R¹⁴ and R¹⁵ cannot be attached to the same carbon atom, (c) when R¹⁴ and R¹⁵ are attached to the same carbon atom, then either each of R¹⁴ and R¹⁵ is independently selected from hydrogen, fluoro, (C₁-C₆)alkyl, hydroxy-(C₁-C₆)alkyl and (C₁-C₆)alkoxy-(C₁-C₆)alkyl, or R¹⁴ and R¹⁵, together with the carbon to which they are attached, form a (C₃-C₆) saturated carbocyclic ring that forms a spiro compound with the nitrogen-containing ring to which they are attached; (d) R¹² and R¹³ cannot both be hydrogen; (e) when R¹⁴ or R¹⁵ is attached to a carbon atom of X⁴ or (CH₂), that is adjacent to the ring nitrogen, then R¹⁴ or R¹⁵, respectively, must be a substituent wherein the point of attachment is a carbon atom; and (f) neither R¹⁴, R¹⁵, R¹⁶ nor R¹⁷ can form a ring with R¹³;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, that is effective in treating or preventing such disorder.

The fused bicyclic nucleus of compounds of the formula Ib to which W and the -CN₂NR²R³ sidechain are attached may be, but is not limited to one of the following groups: benzoxazolyl, benzthiazolyl, benzimidazolyl, benzisoxazolyl, benzoisothiazolyl, indazolyl, indolyl, isoquinolinyl, benzofuryl, benzothienyl, oxindolyl, benzoxazolinonyl, benzthiazolinonyl, benzimidazolinonyl, benzimidazoliniminy, dihydrobenzothienyl-S,S-dioxide, benztriazolyl, benzthiadiazolyl, benzoxadiazolyl, and quinazolinyl.

Preferred embodiments of this invention include methods of treating or preventing a disorder of the eye selected from glaucoma, ocular hypertension, miosis, hyperemia, excess lacrimation and breakdown of the blood aqueous barrier in a mammal, including a human, that comprise administering to said mammal an amount of a compound as defined in paragraphs (1) through (47A) below, or a

-16-

pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, that is effective in treating or preventing such disorder.

(1) A compound of the formula Ia or Ib wherein the substituents at positions "2" and "3" of the nitrogen containing ring of R³ are in a cis configuration. (When R³ is a group of the formula VII or VIII, "a cis configuration", as used herein, means that the non-hydrogen substituent at position "3" is cis to R¹²).

(2) A compound of the formula Ia wherein R³ is a group of the formula III, VII or IX; R² is hydrogen; A is phenyl or indolinyl; W is (C₁-C₃)alkoxy optionally substituted with from one to five fluorine atoms; and R is thiazolyl, imidazolyl, thiadiazolyl, pyrrolyl or oxazolyl, and R may optionally be substituted with one or two (C₁-C₃) alkyl moieties.

(3) A compound of the formula Ib wherein R³ is a group of the formula III, VII or IX; R² is hydrogen; the fused bicyclic ring system to which W and the -CH₂NR²R³ sidechain are attached is benzoxazolyl, benzisoxazolyl, benzthiazolyl or benzimidazolyl; and W is (C₁-C₆)alkoxy optionally substituted with from one to five fluorine atoms.

(4) A compound as defined in paragraph 1, 2 or 3 above wherein: (a) R³ is a group of the formula III and R⁹ is benzhydryl; (b) R³ is a group of the formula VII, R¹² is phenyl, each of R¹³, R¹⁴, R¹⁵ and R¹⁶ is hydrogen, m is zero and X⁴ is -(CH₂)₃-; or (c) R³ is a group of the formula IX, r is two and R¹⁹ is benzhydryl.

(5) A compound of the formula Ia wherein: (a) R³ is a group of the formula III wherein the substituents at positions "2" and "3" of the nitrogen containing ring are in the cis configuration, R⁹ is benzhydryl and A is phenyl; or (b) R³ is a group of the formula VII wherein R¹² and the substituent at position "3" of the nitrogen containing ring are in the cis configuration, A is phenyl, R¹² is phenyl, each of R², R¹³, R¹⁴, R¹⁵ and R¹⁶ is hydrogen, m is zero, W

-17-

methoxy or isopropoxy, X^4 is $-(CH_2)_3-$ and R is thiazolyl, imidazolyl, pyrrolyl, oxazolyl or thiadiazolyl.

(6) A compound of the formula Ib wherein R^3 is a group of the formula IX wherein the substituents at positions "2" and "3" of the nitrogen containing ring are in the cis configuration, R^{19} is benzhydryl, r is two and the fused bicyclic ring system to which W and the $-CH_2NR^2R^3$ sidechain are attached is benzisoxazolyl or benzthiazolyl.

(7) A compound of the formula Ib wherein R^3 is a group of the formula IX, R^{19} is benzhydryl, the fused bicyclic ring system to which W and the $-CH_2NR^2R^3$ sidechain are attached is benzisoxazolyl, and W is methoxy.

(8) A compound of the formula Ib wherein R^3 is a group of the formula VII, R^{12} is phenyl, each of R^{13} , R^{14} , R^{15} and R^{16} is hydrogen, m is zero, X^4 is $-(CH_2)_3-$, and the fused bicyclic ring system to which W and the $-CH_2NR^2R^3$ sidechain are attached is benzothiazolyl, benzoxazolyl or benzimidazolyl.

(9) A compound of the formula Ia wherein R^3 is a group of the formula VII, each of R^{13} , R^{14} , R^{15} and R^{16} is hydrogen, m is zero, X^4 is $-(CH_2)_3-$, A is phenyl, W is methoxy, and R is selected from thiazolyl, imidazolyl, thiadiazolyl and isoxazolyl.

(10) A compound of the formula Ia or Ib that is selected from:

(2S,3S)-3-[2-methoxy-5-(2-thiazolyl)benzyl]amino-2-phenylpiperidine;

(2S,3S)-3-[5-(2-imidazolyl)-2-methoxybenzyl]amino-2-phenylpiperidine;

(2S,3S)-3-[2-methoxy-5-(2-oxopyrrolidinyl)benzyl]amino-2-phenylpiperidine;

(2S,3S)-3-[2-methoxy-5-(4-methyl-2-thiazolyl)benzyl]amino-2-phenylpiperidine;

(2S,3S)-3-[2-methoxy-5-(1,2,3-thiadiazol-4-yl)benzyl]amino-2-phenylpiperidine;

(2S,3S)-(6-methoxy-2-methyl-benzothiazol-5-ylmethyl)-(2-phenylpiperidin-3-yl)amine;

-18-

(2S,3S)-[5-(2,5-dimethyl-pyrrol-1-yl)-2-methoxybenzyl]-(2-phenylpiperidin-3-yl)amine;

(2S,3S)-3-[2-methoxy-5-(5-oxazolyl)benzyl]amino-2-phenylpiperidine;

5 (2S,3S)-(6-methoxy-2-methyl-benzoxazol-5-ylmethyl)-(2-phenyl-piperidin-3-yl)-amine; and

(1SR,2SR,3SR,4RS)-3-[6-methoxy-3-methylbenzisoaxazol-5-yl]methyldiamino-2-benzhydrylazanorbornane.

(11) A compound of the formula Ic, wherein R³ is a group
10 of the formula II, III, VII or IX; R² is hydrogen; ring AA is phenyl or indolinyll; W¹ is (C₁-C₃)alkoxy optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms; and R¹ is S(O)_v-(C₁-C₁₀)alkyl wherein v is zero, one or two, S(O)_v-aryl

15 wherein v is zero, one or two, -O-aryl, (C₁-C₁₀)alkyl-N-SO₂-(C₁-C₁₀)alkyl wherein one or both of the alkyl moieties may optionally be substituted with from one to three fluorine

20 atoms, -N(SO₂-(C₁-C₁₀)alkyl), or (C₁-C₁₀)alkyl-N-SO₂-aryl

wherein said aryl is phenyl or benzyl and may optionally be substituted with from one to three substituents
25 independently selected from (C₁-C₄)alkyl, (C₁-C₄)alkoxy and halo.

(12) A compound as defined in paragraph 11 above, wherein R³ is a group of the formula II, o is two, and each R⁶ and R⁷ is phenyl.

30 (13) A compound as defined in paragraph 11 above, wherein R³ is a group of the formula VII, each of R¹³, R¹⁴, R¹⁵ and R¹⁶ is hydrogen, R¹² is phenyl, m is zero and X⁴ is -(CH₂)₃-.

(14) A compound as defined in paragraph 11 above,
35 wherein R³ is a group of the formula IX, R¹⁹ is benzhydryl and r is two.

(15) A compound as defined in paragraph 11 above, wherein R³ is a group of the formula III, R⁸ is other than hydrogen and R⁹ is benzhydryl.

-19-

(16) A compound to the formula Ic wherein the substituents at positions "2" and "3" of the nitrogen containing ring are in the cis configuration.

(17) A compound of the formula Ic wherein R³ is a group
5 of the formula II wherein the substituents at positions "2" and "3" of the nitrogen containing ring are in the cis configuration, o is two, each of R⁶ and R⁷ is phenyl and ring AA is phenyl or indoliny1.

(18) A compound of the formula Ic wherein R³ is a group
10 of the formula III wherein the substituents at positions "2" and "3" of the nitrogen containing ring are in the cis configuration, R⁸ is other than hydrogen, R⁹ is benzhydryl and ring AA is phenyl.

(19) A compound of the formula Ic wherein R³ is a group
15 of the formula VII wherein R¹² and the substituent at position "3" of the nitrogen containing ring are in the cis configuration, ring AA is phenyl, R¹² is phenyl, each of R², R¹³, R¹⁴, R¹⁵ and R¹⁶ is hydrogen, m is zero, X⁴ is -(CH₂)₂- or -(CH₂)₃- and R¹ is selected from S(O)_v-(C₁-C₁₀)alkyl wherein v
20 is zero, one or two, and (C₁-C₁₀)alkyl-N-SO₂-(C₁-C₁₀)alkyl, and di-(C₁-C₆)alkylamino.

(20) A compound as defined in paragraph 19 above,
wherein X⁴ is -(CH₂)₂- and W¹ is (C₁-C₆) alkoxy optionally
25 substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms.

(21) A compound as defined in paragraph 19 above,
wherein X⁴ is -(CH₂)₃- and W¹ is (C₁-C₆) alkoxy optionally
substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms.

(22) A compound of the formula Ic, wherein R³ is a group
30 of the formula IX wherein the substituents at positions "2" and "3" of the nitrogen containing ring are in the cis configuration, r is two and R¹⁹ is benzhydryl.

(23) A compound as defined in paragraph 22 above,
wherein ring AA is phenyl, W¹ is (C₁-C₆) alkoxy optionally
35 substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms and R¹ is selected from -S(O)_v-(C₁-C₁₀)alkyl wherein v is zero, one or

-20-

two, di-(C₁-C₆)alkylamino and (C₁-C₁₀)alkyl-N-SO₂-(C₁-C₁₀)alkyl.

(24) A compound as defined in paragraph 15 above, wherein ring AA is phenyl, W¹ is (C₁-C₆)alkoxy optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms, and R¹ is selected from -S(O)_v-(C₁-C₁₀)alkyl wherein v is zero, one or

two, and (C₁-C₁₀)alkyl-N-SO₂-(C₁-C₁₀)alkyl.

(25) A compound as defined in paragraph 15 above, wherein ring AA is phenyl, W¹ is (C₁-C₆)alkoxy optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms, and R¹ is selected from amino, (C₁-C₆)alkylamino or di-(C₁-C₆)alkylamino.

(26) A compound as defined in paragraph 12 above, wherein ring AA is phenyl, W¹ is (C₁-C₆)alkoxy optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms, and R¹ is selected from -S(O)_v-(C₁-C₁₀)alkyl wherein v is zero, one or

two, and (C₁-C₁₀)alkyl-N-SO₂-(C₁-C₁₀)alkyl.

(27) A compound as defined in paragraph 12 above, wherein ring AA is phenyl, W¹ is (C₁-C₆)alkoxy optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms, and R¹ is selected from amino, (C₁-C₆)alkylamino or di-(C₁-C₆)alkylamino.

(28) A compound as defined in paragraph 24 above, wherein W¹ is attached at the "2" position of ring AA and R¹ is attached at the "5" position of ring AA, relative to the point of attachment of the NR²R³ containing side chain.

(29) A compound as defined in paragraph 25 above, wherein W¹ is attached at the "2" position of ring AA and R¹ is attached at the "5" position of ring AA, relative to the point of attachment of the NR²R³ containing side chain.

(30) A compound as defined in paragraph 26 above, wherein W¹ is attached at the "2" position of ring AA and R¹ is attached at the "5" position of ring AA, relative to the point of attachment of the NR²R³ containing side chain.

-21-

(31) A compound as defined in paragraph 27 above, wherein W^1 is attached at the "2" position of ring AA and R^1 is attached at the "5" position of ring AA, relative to the point of attachment of the NR^2R^3 containing side chain.

5 (32) A compound as defined in paragraph 13 above, wherein ring AA is phenyl, W^1 is selected from isopropoxy, OCF_3 , OCH_3 , $OCHF_2$ and OCH_2CF_3 , and R^1 is selected from $-S(O)_v-$ (C_1-C_{10})alkyl wherein v is zero, one or two, and (C_1-C_{10})alkyl-N-SO₂-(C_1-C_{10})alkyl.

10 (33) A compound selected from the group consisting of:
(2S,3S)-N-(2-methoxy-5-methylsulfonylphenyl)-methyl-2-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octan-3-amine;

(2S,3S)-N-(2-methoxy-5-methylthiophenyl)methyl-2-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octan-3-amine;

15 (2S,3S)-N-(2-methoxy-5-dimethylaminophenyl)methyl-2-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octan-3-amine; and

(2S,3S)-N-(5-trifluoroacetylaminophenyl)methyl-2-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octan-3-amine.

20 (34) A compound of the formula Ic, wherein R^1 is a group of the formula VII, m is zero, each of $R^{1'}$, $R^{1''}$, $R^{1'''}$ and

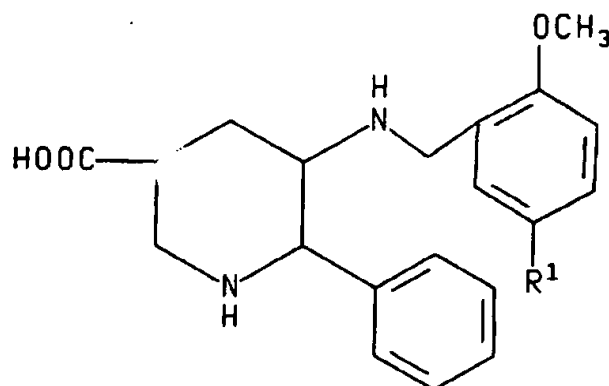
25 R^{17} is hydrogen, R^{12} is phenyl, R^{14} is $\overset{O}{\underset{|}{-C-OH}}$, ring AA is phenyl, W^1 is (C_1-C_3)alkoxy and R^1 is selected from (C_1-C_3)alkyl, $-SCH_3$, SO_2CH_3 , $SOCH_3$, (C_1-C_6)alkylamino and di-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-amino.

(35) A compound of the formula Ic, having the formula

30

-22-

5



10 (36) A compound of the formula Id wherein R^6 , R^{10} , R^{11} and R^{13} are phenyl, R^8 is hydrogen, R^9 is phenyl optionally substituted with chlorine, fluorine, (C_1-C_6) alkyl optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms or (C_1-C_6) alkoxy optionally substituted with from one to three
15 fluorine atoms, m is 0 and n is 3 or 4.

(37) A compound of the formula Id that is selected from the group consisting of:

(2S,3S)-3-(5-tert-butyl-2-methoxybenzyl)amino-2-(3-trifluoromethoxyphenyl)piperidine;

20 (2S,3S)-3-(2-isopropoxy-5-trifluoromethoxybenzyl)amino-2-phenyl-piperidine;

(2S,3S)-3-(2-ethoxy-5-trifluoromethoxybenzyl)amino-2-phenyl-piperidine;

(2S,3S)-3-(2-methoxy-5-trifluoromethoxybenzyl)-amino-2-phenylpiperidine;

25 (2S,3S)-3(-5-tert-butyl-2-trifluoromethoxybenzyl)amino-2-phenylpiperidine;

2-(diphenylmethyl)-N-(2-methoxy-5-trifluoromethoxyphenyl)methyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octan-3-amine;

30 (2S,3S)-3-[5-chloro-2-(2,2,2-trifluoroethoxy)-benzyl]amino-2-phenylpiperidine;

(2S,3S)-3-(5-tert-butyl-2-trifluoromethoxybenzyl)amino-2-phenylpiperidine;

35 (2S,3S)-3-(2-isopropoxy-5-trifluoromethoxybenzyl)amino-2-phenylpiperidine;

-23-

(2S,3S)-3-(2-difluoromethoxy-5-trifluoromethoxybenzyl)-amino-2-phenylpiperidine;

(2S,3S)-2-phenyl-3-[2-(2,2,2-trifluoroethoxybenzyl)-aminopiperidine; and

5 (2S,3S)-2-phenyl-3-(2-trifluoromethoxybenzyl)aminopiperidine.

(38) A compound of the formula Id, wherein R³ is a group of the formula II wherein o is two or three and each of R⁶ and R⁷ is phenyl or substituted phenyl.

10 (39) A compound of the formula Id, wherein R³ is a group of the formula III, R⁸ is hydrogen and R⁹ is phenyl or substituted phenyl.

(40) A compound of the formula Id, wherein R³ is a group of the formula IV wherein l is one or two and each of R¹⁰ and R¹¹ is phenyl or substituted phenyl.

15 (41) A compound of the formula Id, wherein R³ is a group of the formula V wherein n is zero or one and each of R¹⁰ and R¹¹ is phenyl or substituted phenyl.

(42) A compound of the formula Id, wherein R³ is a group of the formula VI wherein p is one and each of R¹⁰ and R¹¹ are phenyl or substituted phenyl.

(43) A compound of the formula Id, wherein R³ is a group of the formula VII wherein q is two, three or four, m is zero and R¹² is phenyl or substituted phenyl.

25 (44) A compound of the formula Id, wherein R³ is a group of the formula VIII wherein y is zero, x is zero or one, z is three or four, m is zero and R¹² is phenyl or substituted phenyl.

(45) A compound of the formula Id wherein R³ is a group of the formula VII, R⁶, R¹⁴, R¹³, R¹⁶ and R¹⁵ are hydrogen, R¹² is phenyl, X¹ is 2-methoxy, X² and X³ are independently selected from hydrogen, chlorine, fluorine, methyl, (C₁-C₆)alkoxy and trifluoromethan, m is 0 and q is 3 or 4.

30 (46) A compound of the formula Id wherein R³ is a group of the formula VII and said compound is selected from the group consisting of:

-24-

- cis-3-(2-chlorobenzylamino)-2-phenylpiperidine;
 cis-3-(2-trifluoromethylbenzylamino)-2-phenyl-
piperidine;
 cis-3-(2-methoxybenzylamino)-2-(2-fluorophenyl)-
5 piperidine;
 cis-3-(2-methoxybenzylamino)-2-(2-chlorophenyl)-
piperidine;
 cis-3-(2-methoxybenzylamino)-2-(2-methylphenyl)-
piperidine;
10 cis-3-(2-methoxybenzylamino)-2-(3-methoxyphenyl)-
piperidine;
 cis-3-(2-methoxybenzylamino)-2-(3-fluorophenyl)-
piperidine;
 cis-3-(2-methoxybenzylamino)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-
15 piperidine;
 cis-3-(2-methoxybenzylamino)-2-phenylpiperidine;
 cis-3-(2-methoxybenzylamino)-2-(3-methylphenyl)-
piperidine;
 cis-3-(2-methoxybenzylamino)-2-(4-fluorophenyl)-
20 piperidine;
 cis-3-(2-methoxybenzylamino)-2-(3-thienyl)-piperidine;
 cis-3-(2-methoxybenzylamino)-2-phenylazacyclo-heptane;
 3-(2-methoxybenzylamino)-4-methyl-2-phenyl-piperidine;
 3-(2-methoxybenzylamino)-5-methyl-2-phenyl-piperidine;
25 3-(2-methoxybenzylamino)-6-methyl-2-phenyl-piperidine;
 (2S,3S)-3-(2-methoxybenzylamino)-2-phenylpiperidine;
 (2S,3S)-1-(5-carboethoxypent-1-yl)-3-(2-methoxybenzyl-
amino)-2-phenylpiperidine;
 (2S,3S)-1-(6-hydroxy-hex-1-yl)-3-(2-methoxybenzyl-
30 amino)-2-phenylpiperidine;
 (2S,3S)-1-(4-hydroxy-4-phenylbut-1-yl)-3-(2-methoxy-
benzylamino)-2-phenylpiperidine;
 (2S,3S)-1-(4-oxo-4-phenylbut-1-yl)-3-(2-methoxybenzyl-
amino)-2-phenylpiperidine;
35 (2S,3S)-1-(5,6-dihydroxyhex-1-yl)-3-(2-methoxybenzyl-
amin)-2-phenylpiperidine;

-25-

- cis-3-(5-fluoro-2-methoxybenzylamino)-2-phenylpiperidine;
(2S,3S)-1-[4-(4-fluorophenyl)-4-oxobut-1-yl]-3-(2-methoxybenzylamino)-2-phenylpiperidine;
5 (2S,3S)-1-[4-[4-fluorophenyl)-4-hydroxybut-1-yl]-3-(2-methoxybenzylamino)-2-phenylpiperidine;
cis-3-(2-methoxy-5-methylbenzylamino)-2-phenylpiperidine;
(2S,3S)-1-(4-benzamidobut-1-yl)-3-(2-methoxybenzylamino)-2-phenylpiperidine;
10 cis-3-(2-methoxynaphth-1-ylmethylamino)-2-phenylpiperidine;
(2S,3S)-3-(2-methoxybenzylamino)-1-(5-N-methylcarboxamidopent-1-yl)-2-phenylpiperidine;
15 (2S,3S)-1-(4-cyanobut-1-yl)-3-(2-methoxybenzylamino)-2-phenylpiperidine;
(2S,3S)-1-[4-(2-naphthamido)but-1-yl]-3-(2-methoxybenzylamino)-2-phenylpiperidine;
(2S,3S)-1-(5-benzamidopent-1-yl)-3-(2-methoxybenzylamino)-2-phenylpiperidine;
20 (2S,3S)-1-(5-aminopent-1-yl)-3-(2-methoxybenzylamino)-2-phenylpiperidine;
(2S,3S)-3-(5-chloro-2-methoxybenzylamino)-2-phenylpiperidine;
25 (2S,3S)-3-(2,5-dimethoxybenzylamino)-2-phenylpiperidine;
cis-3-(3,5-difluoro-2-methoxybenzylamino)-2-phenylpiperidine;
cis-3-(4,5-difluoro-2-methoxybenzylamino)-2-phenylpiperidine;
30 cis-3-(2,5-dimethoxybenzylamino)-1-[4-(4-fluorophenyl)-4-oxobut-1-yl]-2-phenylpiperidine;
cis-3-(5-chloro-2-methoxybenzylamino)-1-(5,6-dihydroxyhex-1-yl)-2-phenylpiperidine;
35 cis-1-(5,6'-dihydroxyhex-1-yl)-3-(2,5-dimethoxybenzylamino)-2-phenylpiperidine;

-26-

- cis-2-phenyl-3-[-2(prop-2-yloxy)benzylamino]piperidine;
cis-3-(2,5-dimethoxybenzyl)amino-2-(3-methoxy-
phenyl)piperidine hydrochloride;
cis-3-(5-chloro-2-methoxybenzyl)amino-2-(3-methoxy-
5 phenyl)piperidine dihydrochloride;
cis-3-(5-chloro-2-methoxybenzyl)amino-2-(3-chloro-
phenyl)piperidine dihydrochloride;
3-(2-methoxybenzylamino)-2,4-diphenylpiperidine;
cis-3-(2-methoxybenzylamino)-2-phenylpyrrolidine;
10 (2S,3S)-3-(5-ethyl-2-methoxybenzyl)amino-2-phenyl-
piperidine;
(2S,3S)-3-(5-n-butyl-2-methoxybenzyl)amino-2-phenyl-
piperidine;
(2S,3S)-3-(2-methoxy-5-n-propylbenzyl)amino-2-phenyl-
15 piperidine;
(2S,3S)-3-(5-isopropyl-2-methoxybenzyl)amino-2-phenyl-
piperidine;
(2S,3S)-3-(5-s-butyl-2-methoxybenzyl)amino-2-phenyl-
piperidine;
20 (2S,3S)-3-(5-t-butyl-2-methoxybenzyl)amino-2-phenyl-
piperidine; and
(2S,3S)-3-(2-methoxy-5-phenylbenzyl)amino-2-phenyl-
piperidine.

(47) A compound of the formula Id, wherein R³ is a group
25 of the formula II or III and said compound is selected from
the group consisting of:

- (2S,3S)-N-(5-isopropyl-2-methoxyphenyl)methyl-2-
diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octan-3-amine;
(2S,3S)-N-(5-tert-butyl-2-methoxyphenyl)methyl-2-
30 diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octan-3-amine;
(2S,3S)-N-(5-methyl-2-methoxyphenyl)methyl-2-diphenyl-
methyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octan-3-amine;
(2S,3S)-N-(5-ethyl-2-methoxyphenyl)methyl-2-diphenyl-
methyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octan-3-amine;
35 (2S,3S)-N-(5-isopropyl-2-methoxyphenyl)methyl-2-
diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octan-3-amine;

-27-

(2S,3S)-N-(5-sec-butyl-2-methoxyphenyl)methyl-2-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octan-3-amine; and

(2S,3S)-N-(5-n-propyl-2-methoxyphenyl)methyl-2-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octan-3-amine.

5 (47A) a compound of the formula Ie that is selected from the group consisting of:

2,4-dimethylthiazole-5-sulfonic acid [4-methoxy-3-((2S,3S)-2-phenylpiperidin-3-ylaminomethyl)phenyl]-methanamide;

10 N-(4,5-dimethylthiazol-2-yl)-N-[4-methoxy-3-((2S,3S)-2-phenylpiperidin-3-yl-aminomethyl)phenyl]-methanesulfonamide;

{5-[(4,5-dimethylthiazol-2-yl)methylamino]-2-methoxybenzyl}-((2S,3S)-2-phenylpiperidin-3-yl)amine;

15 {5-(4,5-dimethylthiazol-2-ylamino)-2-methoxybenzyl}-((2S,3S)-2-phenylpiperidin-3-yl)amine;

4,5-dimethylthiazole-2-sulfonic acid methyl-[3-((2S,3S)-2-phenylpiperidin-3-ylaminomethyl)-4-trifluoromethoxyphenyl]-amide;

20 2,4-dimethylthiazole-5-sulfonic acid [4-isopropoxy-3-((2S,3S)-2-phenylpiperidin-3-ylaminomethyl)phenyl]-methanamide;

2,4-dimethylthiazole-5-sulfonic acid [4-isopropoxy-3-((2S,3S)-2-phenylpiperidin-3-ylaminomethyl)phenyl]-isopropylamide;

25 2,4-dimethylthiazole-5-sulfonic acid [4-methoxy-3-((2S,3S)-2-phenylpiperidin-3-ylaminomethyl)phenyl]-isopropylamide;

2,4-dimethylthiazole-5-sulfonic acid [4-methoxy-3-((2S,3S)-2-phenylpiperidin-3-ylaminomethyl)phenyl]-

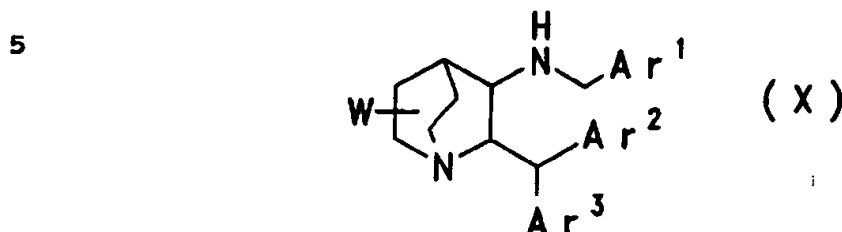
30 isobutylamide; and

2,4-dimethylthiazole-5-sulfonic acid [4-isopropoxy-3-((2S,3S)-2-phenylpiperidin-3-ylaminomethyl)phenyl]-isobutylamide.

This invention also relates to a method of treating r
35 preventing a disorder of the ye s lected from glaucoma, ocular hypertension, miosis, hyper mia, excess lacrimation

-28-

and breakdown of the blood aqueous barrier in a mammal, including a human comprising administering to said mammal an amount of a compound having the formula



10 wherein W is Y or $X(CH_2)_n$;

Y is optionally substituted (C_1-C_6) alkyl, optionally substituted (C_2-C_6) alkenyl or optionally substituted (C_3-C_6) cycloalkyl;

X is optionally substituted (C_1-C_6) alkoxy, hydroxy,
 15 $CONR^1R^2$, CO_2R^1 , CHR^1OR^2 , $CHR^1NR^2R^3$, COR^1 , $CONR^1OR^2$ or optionally substituted aryl, wherein said aryl is selected from phenyl, naphthyl, pyridyl, quinolyl, thienyl, furyl, phenoxyphenyl, oxazolyl, tetrazolyl, thiazolyl, imidazolyl and pyrazolyl; and n is an integer from zero to six;

20 Ar^1 , Ar^2 and Ar^3 are each, independently, optionally substituted aryl, wherein said aryl is selected from phenyl, naphthyl, pyridyl, quinolyl, thienyl, furyl, phenoxyphenyl, oxazolyl, tetrazolyl, thiazolyl, imidazolyl and pyrazolyl;

and R^1 , R^2 and R^3 are independently selected from
 25 hydrogen, optionally substituted (C_1-C_6) alkyl, optionally substituted (C_1-C_6) alkoxy, optionally substituted (C_3-C_6) cycloalkyl, optionally substituted aryl, wherein said aryl is selected from phenyl, naphthyl, pyridyl, quinolyl, thienyl, furyl, phenoxyphenyl, oxazolyl, tetrazolyl, thiazolyl, imidazolyl and pyrazolyl; and optionally
 30 substituted (C_1-C_6) heterocyclic groups, wherein said heterocyclic groups are selected from pyrrolidino, piperidino, morpholino, piperazinyl and thiamorpholino;

and wherein the substituents on the foregoing
 35 substituted alkyl, alkenyl, cycloalkyl and alkoxy groups are

-29-

independently selected from halo, nitro, amino, (C₁-C₄)alkyl, (C₁-C₄)alkoxy, trifluoromethyl and trifluoromethoxy;

and wherein the substituents on the foregoing substituted (C₁-C₃) heterocyclic groups are attached to a sulfur or nitrogen atom on the ring and are independently selected from oxygen, di-oxygen and (C₁-C₄)alkyl when attached to a ring sulfur atom, and are independently selected from oxygen and (C₁-C₄)alkyl when attached to a ring nitrogen atom;

10 and wherein the substituents on said substituted Ar¹ groups are independently selected from (C₁-C₆)alkyl optionally substituted with from one to three halo groups, (C₁-C₆)alkoxy optionally substituted with from one to three halo groups, (C₁-C₆)alkylsulfinyl, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₁-C₆)alkylthio, (C₁-C₆)alkylsulfonyl, (C₁-C₆)alkylsulfonylamino, and di-(C₁-C₆)alkylamino wherein one or both of the alkyl groups may be optionally substituted with a (C₁-C₆)alkylsulfonyl, or (C₁-C₆)alkylsulfinyl group;

and wherein the substituents on said substituted Ar² and Ar³ groups are independently selected from (C₁-C₄)alkyl, (C₁-C₄)alkoxy, (C₁-C₄)alkylthio, (C₁-C₄)alkylsulfinyl, di-(C₁-C₄)alkylamino, trifluoromethyl and trifluoromethoxy; with the proviso that when Y is unsubstituted or is substituted with (C₁-C₄)alkyl, it is attached to the 4- or 6-position of the quinuclidine ring;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt of such compound, that is effective in treating or preventing such disorder.

Preferred embodiments of this invention include methods of treating or preventing a disorder of the eye selected from glaucoma, ocular hypertension, miosis, hyperemia, excess lacrimation and breakdown of the blood aqueous barrier in a mammal, including a human, that comprise administering to said mammal an amount of a compound as defined in paragraphs (48) through (54) below, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, that is effective in treating or preventing such disorder.

-30-

(48) A compound of the formula X, wherein W is $X(CH_2)_n$.

(49) A compound of the formula X, wherein W is Y.

(50) A compound of the formula X, wherein Ar^1 is substituted aryl and W is Y.

5 (51) A compound of the formula X, wherein Ar^1 is mono-, di- or tri-substituted phenyl and W is Y.

(52) A compound of the formula X, wherein Ar^1 is phenyl disubstituted at the 2- and 5-positions and W is Y.

(53) A compound of the formula X, wherein Ar^1 is
10 paramethoxyphenyl, each of Ar^2 and Ar^3 is phenyl and W is Y.

(54) A compound of the formula X that is selected from the group consisting of:

(3R,4S,5S,6S)-N,N-diethyl-5-(5-isopropyl-2-methoxybenzylamino)-6-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octane-3-
15 carboxamide;

(3R,4S,5S,6S)-N,N-diethyl-5-(2,5-dimethoxybenzylamino)-6-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octane-3-carboxamide;

(3R,4S,5S,6S)-5-(5-isopropyl-2-methoxybenzylamino)-6-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octane-3-carboxylic acid;

20 (3R,4S,5S,6S)-5-(2-methoxy-2-methylthiobenzylamino)-6-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octane-3-carboxylic acid;

(3R,4S,5S,6S)-5-(2,5-dimethoxybenzylamino)-6-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo-[2.2.2]octane-3-carboxylic acid;

(3R,4S,5S,6S)-5-(2-methoxy-5-methylbenzylamino)-6-
25 diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octane-3-carboxylic acid;

(3R,4S,5S,6S)-5-(5-ethyl-2-methoxybenzylamino)-6-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octane-3-carboxylic acid;

(3R,4S,5S,6S)-5-(2-methoxyl-5-n-propylbenzylamino)-6-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octane-3-carboxylic acid;

30 (3R,4S,5S,6S)-5-(5-sec-butyl-2-methoxybenzylamino)-6-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octane-3-carboxylic acid;

(3R,4S,5S,6S)-5-(5-N-methyl-methanesulfonylamino-2-methoxybenzylamino)-6-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octane-3-carboxylic acid;

-31-

(3R,4S,5S,6S)-5-(2-methoxy-5-methylsulfinylbenzylamino)-6-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octane-3-carboxylic acid;

(3R,4S,5S,6S)-5-(2-methoxy-5-trifluoromethoxybenzylamino)-6-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octane-3-carboxylic acid;

(3R,4S,5S,6S)-5-(2-methoxy-5-methylsulfonylbenzylamino)-6-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octane-3-carboxylic acid;

10 (3R,4S,5S,6S)-5-(5-dimethylamino-2-methoxybenzylamino)-6-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octane-3-carboxylic acid;

(3R,4S,5S,6S)-5-(5-isopropyl-2-methoxybenzylamino)-6-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octane-2-carboxylic acid;

15 (3R,4S,5S,6S)-5-(2-methoxy-5-methylthiobenzylamino)-6-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octane-2-carboxylic acid;

(3R,4S,5S,6S)-5-(2,5-dimethoxybenzylamino)-6-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octane-2-carboxylic acid;

(3R,4S,5S,6S)-5-(2-methoxy-5-methylbenzylamino)-6-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octane-2-carboxylic acid;

20 (3R,4S,5S,6S)-5-(5-ethyl-2-methoxybenzylamino)-6-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octane-2-carboxylic acid;

(3R,4S,5S,6S)-5-(2-methoxyl-5-n-propylbenzylamino)-6-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octane-2-carboxylic acid;

25 (3R,4S,5S,6S)-5-(5-sec-butyl-2-methoxybenzylamino)-6-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octane-2-carboxylic acid;

(3R,4S,5S,6S)-5-(5-N-methylmethanesulfonylamino-2-methoxybenzylamino)-6-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octane-2-carboxylic acid;

30 (3R,4S,5S,6S)-5-(2-methoxy-5-methylsulfinylbenzylamino)-6-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octane-2-carboxylic acid;

(3R,4S,5S,6S)-5-(2-methoxy-5-trifluoromethoxybenzylamino)-6-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octane-2-carboxylic acid;

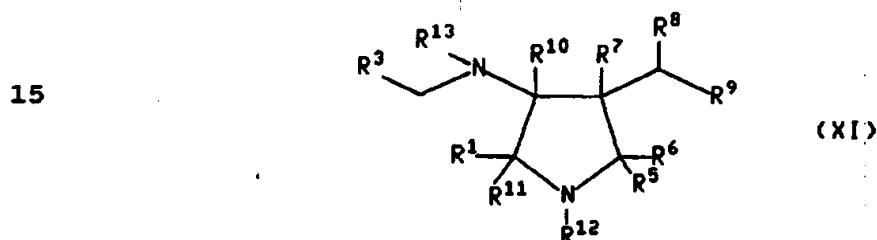
35

-32-

(3R,4S,5S,6S)-5-(2-methoxy-5-methylsulfonylbenzyl-amino)-6-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octane-2-carboxylic acid; and

(3R,4S,5S,6S)-5-(5-dimethylamino-2-methoxybenzylamino)-
 5 6-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octane-2-carboxylic acid.

This invention also relates to a method of treating or preventing a disorder of the eye selected from glaucoma and ocular hypertension, miosis, hyperemia, excess lacrimation
 10 and breakdown of the blood aqueous barrier in a mammal, including a human, comprising administering to said mammal an amount of a compound having the formula



wherein R¹ is selected from hydrogen, (C₁-C₆) straight or
 20 branched alkyl, (C₃-C₇) cycloalkyl wherein one of the carbon atoms may optionally be replaced by nitrogen, oxygen or sulfur; aryl selected from phenyl, biphenyl, indanyl and naphthyl; heteroaryl selected from thienyl, furyl, pyridyl, thiazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxazolyl, isoxazolyl, triazolyl,
 25 tetrazolyl and quinolyl; phenyl (C₇-C₆) alkyl, benzhydryl and benzyl, wherein each of said aryl and heteroaryl groups and the phenyl moieties of said benzyl, phenyl (C₇-C₆) alkyl and benzhydryl may optionally be substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from halo, nitro, (C₁-C₆)
 30 alkyl optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine

-33-

atoms, (C₁-C₆) alkoxy, amino, trihaloalkoxy (e.g., trifluoromethoxy),

5 (C₁-C₆)alkylamino, (C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-C(=O)-, (C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-C(=O)-

10 (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-O-, (C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-,

(C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-, (C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-, (C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-,

15 (C₁-C₆)alkyl-, di-(C₁-C₆)alkylamino, -C(=O)NH-(C₁-C₆)alkyl,

20 (C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)NH-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-, -NHCH(=O) and -NHC(=O)-(C₁-C₆) alkyl;
and wherein one of the phenyl moieties of said benzhydryl
may optionally be replaced by naphthyl, thienyl, furyl or
pyridyl;

25 R³ is aryl selected from phenyl and naphthyl; heteroaryl
selected from indanyl, thienyl, furyl, pyridyl, thiazolyl,
isothiazolyl, oxazolyl, isoxazolyl, triazolyl, tetrazolyl
and quinolyl; and cycloalkyl having 3 to 7 carbon atoms
wherein one of said carbon atoms may optionally be replaced
30 by nitrogen, oxygen or sulfur; wherein each of said aryl and
heteroaryl groups may optionally be substituted with one or
more substituents, and said (C₃-C₇) cycloalkyl may optionally
be substituted with one or two substituents, each of said
substituents being independently selected from halo, nitro,
35 (C₁-C₆) alkyl optionally substituted with from one to three
fluorine atoms, (C₁-C₆) alkoxy optionally substituted with

-34-

from one to three fluorine atoms, amino, phenyl, trihaloalkoxy (e.g., trifluoromethoxy),

5 (C₁-C₆) alkylamino, $\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}\text{-C-NH-(C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{)alkyl}$, (C₁-C₆)alkyl- $\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}\text{-C-}$

10 $\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}\text{-C-O-(C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{)alkyl}$, $\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}\text{-CH-}$, -CH₂OR¹³, NH(C₁-C₆)alkyl-,

$\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}\text{-NHCH-}$, $\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}\text{-NR}^{24}\text{-C-(C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{)alkyl}$ and $\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}\text{-NHC-(C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{)alkyl}$;

one of R⁵ and R⁶ is hydrogen and the other is selected
15 from hydroxymethyl, hydrogen, (C₁-C₃)alkyl, (C₁-C₆)acyloxy-
(C₁-C₃)alkyl, (C₁-C₆)alkoxymethyl and benzyloxymethyl;

R⁷ and R⁸ are independently selected from hydrogen, (C₁-C₃)alkyl and phenyl;

R⁹ is selected from methyl, hydroxymethyl,

20 $\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}\text{HC-}$, R¹⁴R¹⁵NCO₂CH₂-, R¹⁶OCO₂CH₂-, (C₁-C₄)alkyl-CO₂CH₂-, -CONR¹⁷R¹⁸,
R¹⁷R¹⁸NCO₂-, R¹⁹OCO₂-, C₆H₅CH₂CO₂CH₂-, C₆H₅CO₂CH₂-, (C₁-C₄)alkyl-
CH(OH)-, C₆H₅CH(OH)-, C₆H₅CH₂CH(OH)-, CH₂halo, R²⁰SO₂OCH₂-, -CO₂R¹⁶
25 and R²¹CO₂-;

R¹⁰ and R¹¹ are independently selected from hydrogen, (C₁-C₃) alkyl and phenyl;

R¹² is hydrogen, benzyl or a group of the formula



wherein m is an integer from zero to twelve, and any one of the carbon-carbon single bonds of (CH₂)_m, wherein both carbon atoms of such bond are bonded to each other and to another
35 carbon atom in the (CH₂)_m chain, may optionally be replaced by a carbon-carbon double or triple bond, and any one of the carbon atoms of (CH₂)_m may optionally be substituted with R²³;

R¹³, R¹⁴, R¹⁵, R¹⁶, R¹⁷, R¹⁸, R¹⁹, R²⁰, R²¹ and R²⁴ are independently selected from hydrogen, (C₁-C₃)alkyl and
40 phenyl;

-35-

R^{22} and R^{23} are independently selected from hydrogen, hydroxy, halo, amino, carboxy, carboxy(C_1-C_6)alkyl, (C_1-C_6)alkylamino, di-(C_1-C_6)alkylamino, (C_1-C_6)alkoxy, (C_1-C_6)-

5 alkyl-O-C(=O)-, (C_1-C_6)alkyl-O-C(=O)-(C_1-C_6)alkyl, (C_1-C_6)alkyl-C(=O)-,

(C_1-C_6)alkyl-C(=O)-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-O-, (C_1-C_6)alkyl-C(=O)-, (C_1-C_6)-

10 alkyl-C(=O)-(C_1-C_6)alkyl, (C_1-C_6) straight or branched alkyl, (C_3-C_7) cycloalkyl wherein one of the carbon atoms may optionally be replaced by nitrogen, oxygen or sulfur; aryl selected
 15 from phenyl and naphthyl; heteroaryl selected from indanyl, thienyl, furyl, pyridyl, thiazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxazolyl, isoxazolyl, triazolyl, tetrazolyl and quinolyl; phenyl-(C_2-C_6)alkyl, benzhydryl and benzyl, wherein each of said aryl and heteroaryl groups and the phenyl moieties of said
 20 benzyl, phenyl-(C_2-C_6)alkyl and benzhydryl may optionally be substituted with one or two substituents independently selected from halo, nitro, (C_1-C_6)alkyl optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms, (C_1-C_6)alkoxy optionally substituted with from one to three
 25 fluorine atoms,

trifluoromethyl, amino, (C_1-C_6)-alkylamino, (C_1-C_6)alkyl-O-C(=O),
 30 (C_1-C_6)alkyl-O-C(=O)-(C_1-C_6)alkyl, (C_1-C_6)alkyl-C(=O)-O-, (C_1-C_6)alkyl-

C(=O)-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-O-, (C_1-C_6)alkyl-C(=O)-, (C_1-C_6)alkyl-C(=O)-(C_1 -

35 C_6)alkyl-, di-(C_1-C_6)alkylamino, -CNH-(C_1-C_6)alkyl, (C_1-C_6)-

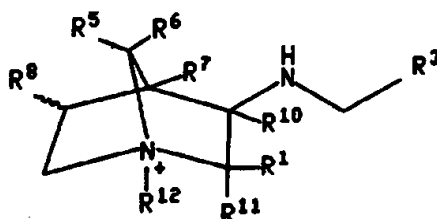
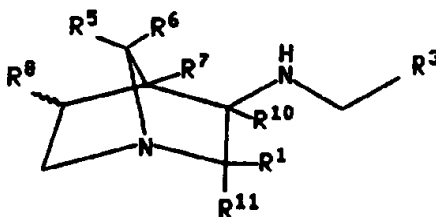
40 alkyl-C(=O)-NH-(C_1-C_6)alkyl, -NHCH and -NHC-(C_1-C_6)alkyl; and wherein one of the phenyl moieties of said benzhydryl may

-36-

optionally be replaced by naphthyl, thienyl, furyl or pyridyl;

or R⁹, together with the carbon to which it is attached, the nitrogen of the pyrrolidine ring, the carbon to which R⁷ is attached and the carbon to which R⁵ and R⁶ are attached form a second pyrrolidine ring; with the proviso that when R⁹, together with the carbon to which it is attached, the nitrogen of the pyrrolidine ring, the carbon to which R⁷ is attached and the carbon to which R⁵ and R⁶ are attached, form a second pyrrolidine ring (thus forming a bicyclic structure containing a bridgehead nitrogen), either R¹² is absent or R¹² is present and the nitrogen of the second pyrrolidine ring is positively charged; or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt of such compound, that is effective in treating or preventing such disorder.

Compounds of the formula XI that contain two pyrrolidine rings may be represented by one of the following two structures, depending on whether R¹² is present or absent.



Preferred embodiments of this invention include methods of treating or preventing a disorder of the eye selected from glaucoma, miosis, hyperemia, excess lacrimation and breakdown of the blood aqueous barrier and ocular hypertension in a mammal, including a human, that comprise

-37-

administering to said mammal an amount of a compound as defined in paragraphs (55) through (59) below, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, that is effective in treating or preventing such disorder.

5 (55) A compound of the formula XI wherein R¹ is benzhydryl.

(56) A compound of the formula XI wherein R¹ is diphenylmethyl, R³ is aryl selected from phenyl or indanyl wherein each of said aryl groups may be optionally substituted with one, two or three substituents, each of R⁵,
10 R⁶, R⁷, R⁸, R¹⁰, and R¹¹ is hydrogen, R⁹ is selected from hydroxymethyl, methoxymethyl, -CO₂R¹⁶, -CONR¹⁷R¹⁸, R¹⁴R¹⁵NCO₂CH₂-, R¹⁶OCO₂CH₂-, (C₁-C₄)alkyl-CO₂CH₂-, C₆H₅CH₂CO₂CH₂-, -CH₂halo and R²⁰SO₂OCH₂-, and R¹² is hydrogen or benzyl.

15 (57) A compound of the formula XI wherein R¹ is phenyl, R³ is aryl selected from phenyl or indanyl wherein each of said aryl groups may be optionally substituted with one, two or three substituents, each of R⁵, R⁶, R⁷, R⁸, R¹⁰, and R¹¹ is hydrogen, R⁹ is selected from hydroxymethyl, methoxymethyl,
20 -CO₂R¹⁸, -CONR¹⁷R¹⁸, R¹⁴R¹⁵NCO₂CH₂CH₂-, R¹⁶OCO₂CH₂-, (C₁-C₄) alkyl-CO₂CH₂-, -CH₂halo, R²⁰SO₂OCH-, and R¹² is hydrogen or benzyl.

(58) A compound of the formula XI wherein R¹ is diphenylmethyl, R³ is aryl selected from phenyl or indanyl wherein each of said aryl groups may be optionally substituted with one, two or three substituents, each of R⁵,
25 R⁶, R⁷, R⁸, R¹⁰, R¹¹ and R¹³ is hydrogen, and wherein R⁹, together with the carbon to which it is attached, the nitrogen of the pyrrolidine ring, the carbon to which R⁷ is attached and the carbon to which R⁵ and R⁶ are attached, form
30 a second pyrrolidine ring (thus forming a bicyclic structure containing a bridgehead nitrogen).

(59) A compound of the formula XI that is selected from the group consisting f:

(2S, 3S, 4R)-2-diphenylmethyl-3-[(2-methoxy-4,5-
35 dimethylphenyl)methylamino]-4-(2-hydroxyethyl)pyrrolidine;

-38-

- (2SR, 3SR, 4RS)-2-diphenylmethyl-3-[(2-methoxy-4,5-dimethylphenyl)methylamino]-4-(2-hydroxyethyl)pyrrolidine;
(2SR, 3SR, 4RS)-2-diphenylmethyl-3-[(2-methoxy-5-(methylethyl)phenyl)methylamino]-4-(carbomethoxymethyl)-
5 pyrrolidine;
(2SR, 3SR, 4RS)-2-diphenylmethyl-3-[(2-methoxy-5-(methylethyl)phenyl)methylamino]-4-(carboxymethyl)-pyrrolidine;
(2SR, 3SR, 4RS)-2-diphenylmethyl-3-[(2-methoxy-5-(methylethyl)phenyl)methylamino]-4-(2-dimethylamino-carbamoylethyl)pyrrolidine;
10 (2SR, 3SR, 4RS)-2-diphenylmethyl-3-[(2-trifluoromethoxyphenyl)methylamino]-4-(2-hydroxyethyl)-pyrrolidine;
(2S, 3S, 4R)-2-diphenylmethyl-3-[(2-methoxy-5-(1,1-dimethylethyl)phenyl)methylamino]-4-(2-hydroxyethyl)-pyrrolidine;
15 (2SR, 3SR, 4RS)-2-diphenylmethyl-3-[(2-methoxy-5-(1,1-dimethylethyl)phenyl)methylamino]-4-(2-methoxyethyl)-pyrrolidine;
20 (2S, 3S, 4R)-2-diphenylmethyl-3-[(2-methoxy-5-methylethyl)phenyl)methylamino]-4-(2-hydroxyethyl)-pyrrolidine;
(2SR, 3SR, 4RS)-2-diphenylmethyl-3-[(2-methoxy-5-methylethyl)phenyl)methylamino]-4-(2-methoxyethyl)-
25 pyrrolidine;
(2SR, 3SR, 4RS)-2-diphenylmethyl-3-[(2-methyl-5-(1,1-dimethylethyl)phenyl)methylamino]-4-(2-hydroxyethyl)-pyrrolidine;
(1SR, 2SR, 3SR, 4RS)-1-aza-2-diphenylmethyl-3-[(2-methoxy-4,5-dimethylphenyl)-methylamino]-bicyclo[2.2.1]-
30 heptane;
(1SR, 2SR, 3SR, 4RS)-1-aza-2-diphenylmethyl-3-[(2-methoxyphenyl)methylamino]bicyclo[2.2.1]heptane;

-39-

- (1SR, 2SR, 3SR, 4RS)-1-aza-2-diphenylmethyl-3-[(2-methoxy-5-(1,1-dimethylethyl)phenyl)methylamino]bicyclo[2.2.1]heptane;
- (1SR, 2SR, 3SR, 4RS)-1-aza-2-diphenylmethyl-3-[(2-methoxy-5-trifluoromethoxyphenyl)methylamino]bicyclo[2.2.1]heptane;
- (1SR, 2SR, 3SR, 4RS)-1-aza-2-diphenylmethyl-3-[(2-methoxy-5-(1-methylethyl)phenyl)methylamino]bicyclo[2.2.1]heptane;
- 10 (1SR, 2SR, 3SR, 4RS)-1-aza-2-diphenylmethyl-3-[(2-methoxy-5-propylphenyl)methylamino]bicyclo[2.2.1]heptane;
- (1SR, 2SR, 3SR, 4RS)-1-aza-2-diphenylmethyl-3-[(2-methoxy-5-(1-methylpropyl)phenyl)methylamino]bicyclo[2.2.1]heptane;
- 15 (1SR, 2SR, 3SR, 4RS)-1-aza-2-phenyl-3-[(2-methoxyphenyl)methylamino]bicyclo[2.2.1]heptane;
- (1SR, 2SR, 3SR, 4RS)-1-aza-2-phenyl-3-[(2-methoxy-5-trifluoromethoxyphenyl)methylamino]bicyclo[2.2.1]heptane;
- (2SR, 3SR, 4RS)-N-1-phenylmethyl-2-diphenylmethyl-3-[(2-methoxyphenyl)methylamino]-4-(2-hydroxyethyl)-pyrrolidine;
- 20 (2SR, 3SR, 4RS)-2-diphenylmethyl-3-[(2-methoxyphenyl)methylamino]-4-(2-hydroxyethyl)pyrrolidine;
- (2SR, 3SR, 4RS)-2-diphenylmethyl-3-[(2-methoxy-5-(1,1-dimethylethyl)phenyl)methylamino]-4-(2-hydroxyethyl)-pyrrolidine;
- 25 (2SR, 3SR, 4RS)-2-diphenylmethyl-3-[(2-methoxy-5-trifluoromethoxyphenyl)methylamino]-4-(2-hydroxyethyl)-pyrrolidine;
- (2SR, 3SR, 4RS)-2-diphenylmethyl-3-[(2-methoxy-5-(1-methylethyl)phenyl)methylamino]-4-(2-hydroxyethyl)-pyrrolidine;
- 30 (2SR, 3SR, 4RS)-2-diphenylmethyl-3-[(2-methoxy-5-propylphenyl)methylamino]-4-(2-hydroxyethyl)pyrrolidine;

-40-

(2SR, 3SR, 4RS)-2-diphenylmethyl-3-[(2-methoxy-5-(1-methyl-1-propyl)phenyl)methylamino]-4-(2-hydroxyethyl)pyrrolidine;

(2SR, 3SR, 4RS)-2-diphenylmethyl-3-[(2-trifluoromethoxy-5-(1,1-dimethylethyl)phenyl)methylamino]-4-(2-hydroxyethyl)pyrrolidine;

(2SR, 3SR, 4RS)-2-diphenylmethyl-3-[(2-methoxy-5-chlorophenyl)methylamino]-4-(2-hydroxyethyl)pyrrolidine;

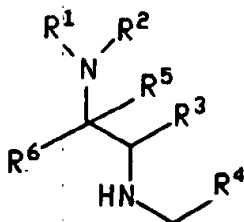
(2SR, 3SR, 4RS)-2-phenyl-3-[(2-methoxyphenyl)methylamino]-4-(2-hydroxyethyl)pyrrolidine;

(2SR, 3SR, 4RS)-2-phenyl-3-[(2-methoxy-5-(1,1-dimethylethyl)phenyl)methylamino]-4-(2-hydroxyethyl)pyrrolidine; and

(2SR, 3SR, 4RS)-2-phenyl-3-[(2-methoxy-5-trifluoromethoxyphenyl)methylamino]-4-(2-hydroxyethyl)pyrrolidine.

This invention also relates to a method of treating or preventing a disorder of the eye selected from glaucoma, ocular hypertension, miosis, hyperemia, excess lacrimation and breakdown of the blood aqueous barrier in a mammal, including a human, comprising administering to said mammal an amount of a compound of the formula

25



XII

wherein R¹ is hydrogen, (C₁-C₆) alkyl, a saturated (C₆-C₁₀) carbocyclic ring system containing two fused rings, a saturated (C₆-C₁₀) carbocyclic bridged ring system containing two rings, or benzyl wherein the phenyl moiety of said benzyl may optionally be substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from halo, (C₁-C₆) alkyl optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms

-41-

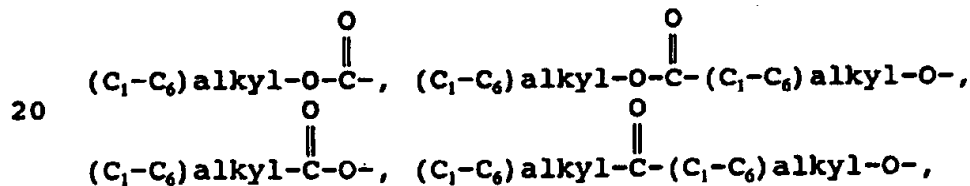
and (C₁-C₆) alkoxy optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms;

R² is hydrogen, benzyl or a group of the formula



wherein m is an integer from zero to twelve, and any one of the carbon-carbon single bonds of (CH₂)_m, wherein both carbon atoms of such bond are bonded to each other and to another carbon atom of the (CH₂)_m chain, may optionally be replaced by a carbon-carbon double or triple bond, and any one of the carbon atoms of (CH₂)_m may optionally be substituted with R⁹;

R⁸ and R⁹ are independently selected from hydrogen, hydroxy, halo, amino, carboxy, carboxy(C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₁-C₆)alkylamino, di-(C₁-C₆)alkylamino, (C₁-C₆)alkoxy,



25 (C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-, (C₁-C₆) straight or branched alkyl, (C₃-C₇) cycloalkyl wherein one of the carbon atoms may optionally be replaced by nitrogen, oxygen or sulfur; aryl selected from phenyl and naphthyl; heteroaryl selected from indanyl, thienyl, furyl, pyridyl, thiazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxazolyl, isoxazolyl, triazolyl, tetrazolyl and quinolyl; phenyl-(C₂-C₆)alkyl, benzhydryl and benzyl, wherein each of said aryl and heteroaryl groups and the phenyl moieties of said benzyl, phenyl-(C₂-C₆)alkyl and benzhydryl may optionally be substituted with one or two substituents independently selected from halo, nitro, (C₁-C₆)alkyl optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms, (C₁-C₆)alkoxy optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms,

-42-

trifluoromethyl, amino, (C₁-C₆)-alkylamino, (C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-C(=O)-,

5 (C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-C(=O)-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-, (C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-O-,

10 (C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-, (C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-,

15 (C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-, di-(C₁-C₆)alkylamino,

20 -C(=O)NH-(C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₁-C₆)-alkyl-C(=O)NH-(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -NHCH(=O) and

-NHC(=O)-(C₁-C₆)alkyl; and wherein one of the phenyl moieties of said benzhydryl may optionally be replaced by naphthyl,

25 thienyl, furyl or pyridyl;

or R¹ and R², together with the nitrogen to which they are attached, form a saturated or unsaturated monocyclic ring containing from three to eight carbon atoms, a fused bicyclic ring containing from six to ten carbon atoms, or a

30 saturated bridged ring system containing from six to ten carbon atoms;

R⁴ is aryl selected from phenyl and naphthyl; heteroaryl selected from indanyl, thienyl, furyl, pyridyl, thiazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxazolyl, isoxazolyl, triazolyl, tetrazolyl

35 and quinolyl; and cycloalkyl having from three to seven carbon atoms wherein one of said carbon atoms may optionally be replaced by nitrogen, oxygen or sulfur; wherein each of said aryl and heteroaryl groups may optionally be substituted with one or more substituents, and said (C₃-C₇)

40 cycloalkyl may optionally be substituted with one, two or three substituents, each of said substituents being independently selected from halo, nitro, (C₁-C₆) alkyl optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine

-43-

atoms, (C₁-C₆) alkoxy optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms, phenyl,

5 amino, (C₁-C₆) alkylamino, $\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}\text{-C-NH-(C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{)alkyl}$, (C₁-C₆)alkyl- $\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}\text{-C-}$,

10 $\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}\text{-C-O-(C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{)alkyl}$, $\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}\text{-CH-}$, $\text{-CH}_2\text{OR}^{12}$, $\text{NH}_2\text{(C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{)alkyl-}$,

15 -NHCH- , $\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}\text{-NHC-(C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{)alkyl}$, $\text{-NH-}\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}\text{-S-(C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{)alkyl}$ and

20 $\text{(C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{)alkyl-N-}\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}\text{-S-(C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{)alkyl}$;

R³ is hydrogen, (C₃-C₈)cycloalkyl, (C₁-C₆) straight or branched alkyl or phenyl optionally substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from halo, (C₁-C₆)alkyl optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms, and (C₁-C₆)alkoxy optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms;

25 R⁵ is hydrogen, (C₁-C₆)alkyl, or phenyl optionally substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from halo, (C₁-C₆)alkyl optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms and (C₁-C₆)alkoxy optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms;

30 R⁶ is selected from hydrogen, (C₁-C₆) straight or branched alkyl, (C₃-C₇) cycloalkyl wherein one of the carbon atoms may optionally be replaced by nitrogen, oxygen or sulfur; aryl selected from phenyl, biphenyl, indanyl and naphthyl; heteroaryl selected from thienyl, furyl, pyridyl, thiazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxazolyl, isoxazolyl, triazolyl, tetrazyl and quinolyl; phenyl (C₂-C₆) alkyl, benzhydryl and
35 benzyl, wherein each of said aryl and heteroaryl groups and the phenyl moieties of said benzyl, phenyl (C₂-C₆) alkyl and benzhydryl may optionally be substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from halo, nitro, (C₁-C₆)

-44-

alkyl optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms, (C₁-C₆) alkoxy, trifluoromethyl, amino, trihaloalkoxy

5 (e.g., trifluoromethoxy), (C₁-C₆) alkylamino, (C₁-C₆) alkyl-O-C(=O)-,
 10 (C₁-C₆) alkyl-O-C(=O)-(C₁-C₆) alkyl, (C₁-C₆) alkyl-C(=O)-O-,
 15 (C₁-C₆) alkyl-C(=O)-(C₁-C₆) alkyl-O-, (C₁-C₆) alkyl-C(=O)-,
 (C₁-C₆) alkyl-C(=O)-(C₁-C₆) alkyl-, di-(C₁-C₆) alkylamino,
 20 -C(=O)NH-(C₁-C₆) alkyl, (C₁-C₆) alkyl-C(=O)NH-(C₁-C₆) alkyl-, -NHCH(=O) and
 -NHC(=O)-(C₁-C₆) alkyl; and wherein one of the phenyl moieties of
 said benzhydryl may optionally be replaced by naphthyl,
 25 thienyl, furyl or pyridyl; and

R¹² is hydrogen, (C₁-C₃) alkyl or phenyl;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt of such compound,
 that is effective in treating or preventing such disorder.

Preferred embodiments of this invention include methods
 30 of treating or preventing a disorder of the eye selected
 from glaucoma, ocular hypertension, miosis, hyperemia,
 excess lacrimation and breakdown of the blood aqueous
 barrier in a mammal, including a human, that comprise
 administering to said mammal an amount of a compound as
 35 defined in paragraphs (60) through (62) below, or a
 pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, that is effective
 in treating or preventing such disorder.

(60) A compound of the formula XII wherein R² is
 hydrogen, or R² and R¹, together with the nitrogen to which
 40 they are attached, form a monocyclic ring containing five to
 seven carbon atoms; R³ is hydrogen, methyl or phenyl; R⁵ is
 hydrogen; R⁴ is phenyl or indanyl, wherein said phenyl or
 indanyl may optionally be substituted with from one to three

-45-

substituents independently selected from halo, nitro, (C₁-C₆) alkyl optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms, (C₁-C₆) alkoxy, trihaloalkoxy (e.g., trifluoromethoxy), (C₁-C₆) alkylamino, -C(O)NH-(C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(O)-, -C(O)-O-(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -C(O)H, -CH₂OR¹²,
 5 -NH(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -NHC(O)H, -NHC(O)-(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -NHSO₂(C₁-C₆)alkyl and (C₁-C₆)alkyl-N-SO₂-(C₁-C₆)alkyl; and R⁶ is phenyl.

(61) A compound of the formula XII wherein R¹ is alkyl, R⁶ is unsubstituted phenyl, R⁴ is a monosubstituted or
 10 disubstituted aryl group that is substituted at the C-2 position with an alkoxy group or substituted at the C-5 position with an alkyl, alkoxy or trihaloalkoxy group, or substituted in such manner at both C-2 and C-5 positions (i.e., with an alkoxy group at the C-2 position and an
 15 alkyl, alkoxy or trihaloalkoxy group at the C-5 position), and each of R², R³ and R⁵ is hydrogen.

(62) A compound of the formula XII that is selected from the group consisting of:

- 1-N-cyclohexyl-1-phenyl-2-N'-[(2-methoxyphenyl)methyl]-
 20 1,2-ethanediamine;
 1-N-cyclohexyl-1-phenyl-2-N'-[(2-methoxy-5-trifluoromethoxyphenyl)methyl]-1,2-ethanediamine;
 1-N-pyrrolidyl-1-phenyl-2-N'-[(2-methoxyphenyl)methyl]-
 1,2-ethanediamine;
 25 1-N-methyl-1-phenyl-2-N'-[(2-methoxyphenyl)methyl]-1,2-ethanediamine;
 1-N-cyclopentyl-1-phenyl-2-N'-[(2-methoxyphenyl)methyl]-1,2-ethanediamine;
 1-N-propyl-1-phenyl-2-N'-[(2-methoxyphenyl)methyl]-1,2-
 30 ethanediamine;
 1-N-phenylmethyl-1-phenyl-2-N'-[(2-methoxyphenyl)methyl]-1,2-ethanediamine;
 1-N-cyclooctyl-1-phenyl-2-N'-[(2-methoxyphenyl)methyl]-
 1,2-ethanediamine;
 35 1-N-cycl butyl-1-phenyl-2-N'-[(2-methoxyphenyl)methyl]-1,2-ethanediamine;

-46-

1-N-(2-adamantyl)-1-phenyl-2-N'-[(2-methoxyphenyl)methyl]-1,2-ethanediamine;

1-N-(1,1-dimethylethyl)-1-phenyl-2-N'-[(2-methoxyphenyl)methyl]-1,2-ethanediamine;

5 1-N-cyclopropyl-1-phenyl-2-N'-[(2-methoxyphenyl)methyl]-1,2-ethanediamine;

1-N-isopropyl-1-phenyl-2-N'-[(2-methoxyphenyl)methyl]-1,2-ethanediamine;

10 1-N-(1-phenylethyl)-1-phenyl-2-N'-[(2-methoxyphenyl)methyl]-1,2-ethanediamine;

1-N-(2-norbornyl)-1-phenyl-2-N'-[(2-methoxyphenyl)methyl]-1,2-ethanediamine;

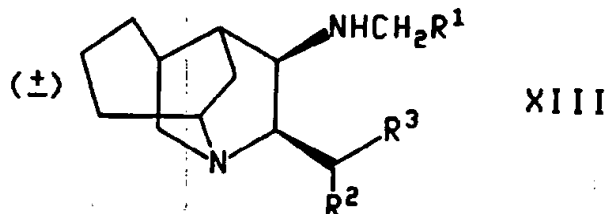
1-N-cyclohexyl-1-phenyl-2-N'-[(2-methoxy-5-tert-butylphenyl)methyl]-1,2-ethanediamine;

15 1-N-cyclohexyl-1-phenyl-2-N'-[(2-methoxy-5-isopropylphenyl)methyl]-1,2-ethanediamine;

1-N-cyclohexyl-1-phenyl-2-N'-[(2-methoxy-4,5-dimethylphenyl)methyl]-1,2-ethanediamine; and

20 1-N-cyclohexyl-1-N-(6-hydroxyhexyl)-1-phenyl-2-N'-[(2-methoxyphenyl)methyl]-1,2-ethanediamine.

This invention also relates to a method of treating or preventing a disorder of the eye selected from glaucoma, ocular hypertension, miosis, hyperemia, excess lacrimation and breakdown of the blood aqueous barrier in a mammal, including a human, comprising administering to said mammal an amount of a compound of the formula



wherein R¹ is cycloalkyl having from five to seven carbon atoms, pyrrolyl, thienyl, pyridyl, phenyl or substituted phenyl, wherein said substituted phenyl is substituted with
35 'from one to three substituents independently selected from fluorine, chlorine, bromine, trifluoromethyl, alkyl having

-47-

from one to three carbon atoms, alkoxy having from one to three carbon atoms, carboxy, alkoxycarbonyl having from one to three carbon atoms in the alkoxy moiety and benzyloxycarbonyl;

5 R^2 is furyl, thienyl, pyridyl, indolyl, biphenyl, phenyl or substituted phenyl, wherein said substituted phenyl is substituted with one or two substituents independently selected from fluorine, chlorine, bromine, trifluoromethyl, alkyl having from one to three carbon atoms, alkoxy having
10 from one to three carbon atoms, carboxy, alkoxycarbonyl having from one to three carbon atoms in the alkoxy moiety and benzyloxycarbonyl; and

R^3 is thienyl, phenyl, fluorophenyl, chlorophenyl or bromophenyl, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt of such
15 compound, that is effective in treating or preventing such disorder.

 Preferred embodiments of this invention include methods of treating or preventing a disorder of the eye selected from glaucoma, ocular hypertension, miosis, hyperemia,
20 excess lacrimation and breakdown of the blood aqueous barrier in a mammal, including a human, that comprise administering to said mammal an amount of a compound as defined in paragraphs (63) through (65) below, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, that is effective
25 in treating or preventing such disorder.

(63) A compound of the formula XIII, wherein R^1 is phenyl or substituted phenyl.

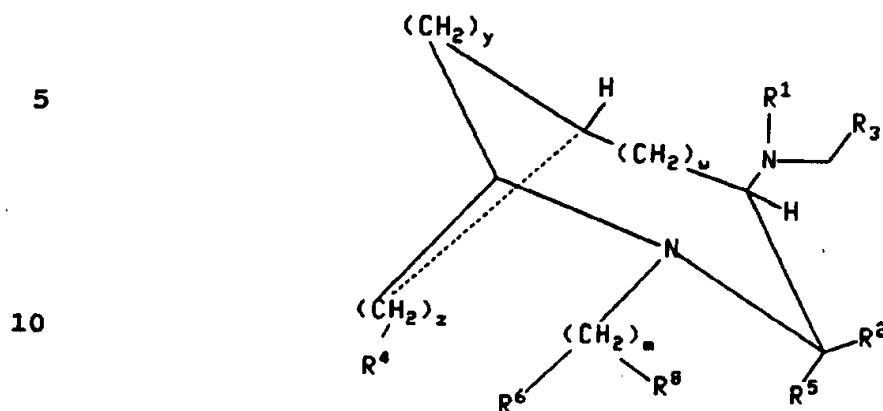
(64) A compound of the formula XIII, wherein R^1 is methoxyphenyl.

30 (65) A compound of the formula XIII, wherein said compound is (+)-cis-9-diphenylmethyl-N-((2-methoxyphenyl)methyl)-10-azatricyclo[4.4.1.0^{5,7}]undecan-8-amine.

 This invention also relates to a method of treating or preventing a disorder of the eye selected from glaucoma,
35 ocular hypertension, miosis, hyperemia, excess lacrimation and breakdown of the blood aqueous barrier in a mammal,

-48-

including a human, comprising administering to said mammal an amount of a compound of the formula



XIV

wherein m is an integer from 0 to 8, and any one of the carbon-carbon single bonds of $(CH_2)_m$, wherein both carbon atoms of such bond are bonded to each other and to another carbon atom in the $(CH_2)_m$ chain, may optionally be replaced by a carbon-carbon double bond or a carbon-carbon triple bond, and any one of the carbon atoms of said $(CH_2)_m$ may optionally be substituted with R^8 ;

w is an integer from 0 to 2;

y is an integer from 1 to 4;

z is an integer from 1 to 4, and wherein any one of the carbon atoms of said $(CH_2)_z$ may optionally be substituted with R^4 ;

R^1 is hydrogen or (C_1-C_3) alkyl optionally substituted with hydroxy, alkoxy or fluoro;

R^2 is a group selected from hydrogen, (C_1-C_6) straight or branched alkyl, (C_3-C_7) cycloalkyl wherein one of the carbon atoms may optionally be replaced by nitrogen, oxygen or sulfur; aryl selected from phenyl, indanyl, and naphthyl; heteroaryl selected from thienyl, furyl, pyridyl, thiazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxazolyl, isoxazolyl, triazolyl, tetrazolyl and quinolyl; phenyl (C_2-C_6) alkyl, benzhydryl and benzyl, wherein one of the phenyl moieties of said benzhydryl may optionally be replaced by naphthyl, thienyl, furyl or

-49-

pyridyl and wherein each of said aryl and heteroaryl groups and the phenyl moieties of said benzyl, phenyl(C₂-C₆)alkyl and benzhydryl may optionally be substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from halo, nitro,
 5 (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₁-C₆)alkoxy, trifluoromethyl, amino,

(C₁-C₆)-alkylamino, (C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-C(=O)-, (C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-C(=O)-
 10 (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-O-, (C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-
 (C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-, (C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-, (C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-
 15 (C₁-C₆)alkyl-, di-(C₁-C₆)alkylamino, -C(=O)NH-(C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₁-C₆)-
 20 alkyl-C(=O)NH-(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -NHCH(=O) and -NHC(=O)-(C₁-C₆) alkyl;

R⁵ is hydrogen, phenyl or (C₁-C₆)alkyl;

or R² and R⁵, together with the carbon to which they are attached, form a saturated carbocyclic ring having from 3 to 7 carbon atoms wherein one of said carbon atoms may
 25 optionally be replaced by oxygen, nitrogen or sulfur;

R³ is aryl selected from phenyl, indanyl, and naphthyl; heteroaryl selected from thienyl, furyl, pyridyl, thiazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxazolyl, isoxazolyl, triazolyl, tetrazolyl and quinolyl; and cycloalkyl having 3 to 7 carbon atoms
 30 wherein one of said carbon atoms may optionally be replaced by nitrogen, oxygen or sulfur; wherein each of said aryl and heteroaryl groups may optionally be substituted with one or more substituents, and said (C₃-C₇) cycloalkyl may optionally be substituted with one or two substituents, each of said
 35 substituents being independently selected from halo, nitro, (C₁-C₆)alkyl optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms, (C₁-C₆)alkoxy optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms, trifluoromethyl, phenyl,

-50-

amino, (C₁-C₆)alkylamino, (C₁-C₆)dialkyl amino, $\text{-}\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}\text{C-NH-(C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{)}$

5 $\text{C}_6\text{)alkyl, (C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{)alkyl-}\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}\text{C-NH-(C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{)alkyl, -NH}\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}\text{CH and}$

10 $\text{-NH}\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}\text{C-(C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{)alkyl;}$

R⁴ is independently selected from hydrogen, hydroxy, halo, amino, oxo (=O), nitrile, (C₁-C₆)alkylamino, di-(C₁-C₆)alkylamino, (C₁-C₆)alkoxy,

15 $\text{(C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{)alkyl-O-}\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}\text{C-}, \text{(C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{)alkyl-O-}\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}\text{C-(C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{)alkyl,}$

20 $\text{(C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{)alkyl-}\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}\text{C-O-}, \text{(C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{)alkyl-}\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}\text{C-(C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{)alkyl-O-},$
hydroxy-(C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₁-C₆)alkoxy(C₁-C₆)alkyl,

$\text{(C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{)alkyl-}\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}\text{C-}, \text{(C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{)alkyl-}\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}\text{C-(C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{)alkyl-},$ and the groups

25 set forth in the definition of R²;

R^6 is $\text{NH}\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}\text{CR}^9$, NHCH_2R^9 , NHSO_2R^9 or one of the groups set forth in any of the definitions of R², and R⁴;

30 R⁸ is oximino (=NOH) or one of the groups set forth in any of the definitions of R², and R⁴;

R⁹ is (C₁-C₆)alkyl, hydrogen, phenyl or phenyl (C₁-C₆)alkyl;

with the proviso that (a) when m is 0, R⁸ is absent and

35 R⁶ is hydrogen, (b) neither R⁴, R⁶, nor R⁸ can form, together with the carbon to which it is attached, a ring with R⁵, (c) the sum of y and z must be less than 7; or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, that is effective in treating or preventing such disorder.

40 Preferred embodiments of this invention include methods of treating or preventing a disorder of the eye selected from glaucoma, ocular hypertension, miosis, hyperemia,

-51-

excess lacrimation and breakdown of the blood aqueous barrier in a mammal, including a human, that comprise administering to said mammal an amount of a compound as defined in paragraphs (66) through (68) below, or a
 5 pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, that is effective in treating or preventing such disorder.

(66) A compound of the formula XIV, wherein R^2 is a radical selected from hydrogen, phenyl, naphthyl and benzhydryl; wherein each of said phenyl, naphthyl and
 10 benzhydryl may optionally be substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from halo, nitro, (C_1-C_6) alkyl, (C_1-C_6) alkoxy, trifluoromethyl, amino,

15 (C_1-C_6) -alkylamino, (C_1-C_6) alkyl-O-C(=O)-, (C_1-C_6) alkyl-O-C(=O)-

(C_1-C_6) alkyl, (C_1-C_6) alkyl-C(=O)-O-, (C_1-C_6) alkyl-C(=O)-

20 (C_1-C_6) alkyl-O-, (C_1-C_6) alkyl-C(=O)-, (C_1-C_6) alkyl-C(=O)-

(C_1-C_6) alkyl-, di- (C_1-C_6) alkylamino, -CNH- (C_1-C_6) alkyl, (C_1-C_6) -

25 $\text{alkyl-C(=O)-NH-}(C_1-C_6)\text{alkyl}$, -NHCH and -NHC- (C_1-C_6) alkyl; and wherein one of the phenyl moieties of said benzhydryl may optionally be replaced by naphthyl, thienyl, furyl or
 30 pyridyl.

(67) A compound of the formula XIV, wherein R^2 is a group selected from hydrogen, phenyl, naphthyl and benzhydryl; wherein each of said phenyl, naphthyl and benzhydryl may optionally be substituted with one or more
 35 substituents independently selected from halo, nitro, (C_1-C_6) alkyl, (C_1-C_6) alkoxy, trifluoromethyl, amino,

(C_1-C_6) -alkylamino, (C_1-C_6) alkyl-O-C(=O)-, (C_1-C_6) alkyl-O-C(=O)-

40

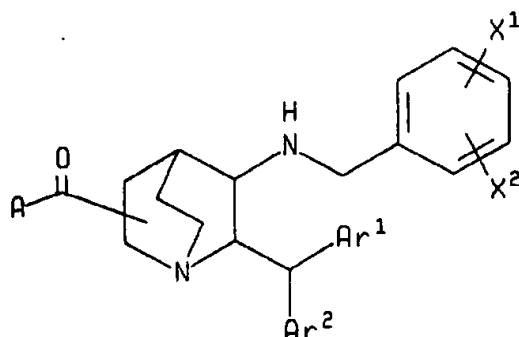
-52-

$(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, $(C_1-C_6)alkyl-\overset{\overset{O}{\parallel}}{C}-O-$, $(C_1-C_6)alkyl-\overset{\overset{O}{\parallel}}{C}-$
 5 $(C_1-C_6)alkyl-O-$, $(C_1-C_6)alkyl-\overset{\overset{O}{\parallel}}{C}-$, $(C_1-C_6)alkyl-\overset{\overset{O}{\parallel}}{C}-$
 $(C_1-C_6)alkyl-$, di- $(C_1-C_6)alkylamino$, $-\overset{\overset{O}{\parallel}}{C}NH-(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, $(C_1-C_6)-$
 10 $alkyl-\overset{\overset{O}{\parallel}}{C}NH-(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, $-\overset{\overset{O}{\parallel}}{N}HCH$ and $-\overset{\overset{O}{\parallel}}{N}HC-(C_1-C_6)alkyl$; and
 wherein one of the phenyl moieties of said benzhydryl may
 optionally be replaced by naphthyl, thienyl, furyl or
 15 pyridyl; and
 R^4 is independently selected from hydrogen, hydroxy,
 halo, amino, oxo ($=O$), nitrile,
 $(C_1-C_6)alkylamino$, di- $(C_1-C_6)alkylamino$, $(C_1-C_6)alkoxy$,
 20 $(C_1-C_6)alkyl-O-\overset{\overset{O}{\parallel}}{C}-$, $(C_1-C_6)alkyl-O-\overset{\overset{O}{\parallel}}{C}-(C_1-C_6)alkyl$,
 $(C_1-C_6)alkyl-\overset{\overset{O}{\parallel}}{C}-O-$, $(C_1-C_6)alkyl-\overset{\overset{O}{\parallel}}{C}-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-O-$,
 25 hydroxy- $(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, $(C_1-C_6)alkoxy(C_1-C_6)alkyl$
 $(C_1-C_6)alkyl-\overset{\overset{O}{\parallel}}{C}-$, $(C_1-C_6)alkyl-\overset{\overset{O}{\parallel}}{C}-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-$, $(C_1-C_6)alkyl$ and
 phenyl.

30 (68) A compound of the formula XIV, wherein said
 compound is (3RS,4RS)-3-phenyl-4-(2-methoxybenzyl)amino-2-
 azabicyclo[3.3.1]nonane.

This invention also relates to a method of treating or
 preventing a disorder of the eye selected from glaucoma and
 35 ocular hypertension, miosis, hyperemia, excess lacrimation
 and breakdown of the blood aqueous barrier in a mammal,
 including a human, comprising administering to said mammal
 a compound of the formula

-53-



10

XV

wherein X^1 is C_1-C_3 alkoxy or halosubstituted (C_1-C_3) alkoxy;
 X^2 is hydrogen, halogen, (C_1-C_3)alkyl, (C_2-C_3)alkenyl,
 (C_2-C_3)alkynyl, (C_1-C_3)alkoxy, (C_1-C_3)alkylthio, (C_1-C_3)
 15 alkylsulfinyl, (C_1-C_3) alkylsulfonyl, halosubstituted (C_1-C_3)
 alkyl, halosubstituted (C_1-C_3) alkoxy, (C_1-C_3)alkylamino,
 dialkylamino having from 1 to 5 carbon atoms in each alkyl
 moiety, (C_1-C_3)alkylsulfonylamino (which may be substituted

20 by halogen), (C_1-C_3)alkyl-N-(C_1-C_3)alkylsulfonyl (which may be
 substituted by halogen in the alkylsulfonyl moiety), (C_1-C_3)
 alkanoylamino (which may be substituted by halogen) or

25 (C_1-C_3)alkyl-N-(C_1-C_3)alkanoyl (which may be substituted by
 halogen in the alkanoyl moiety);

Ar^1 and Ar^2 are each, independently, thienyl, phenyl,
 fluorophenyl, chlorophenyl or bromophenyl;

30 A is $Y-(CH_2)_m-CH(R^2)-(CH_2)_n-NR^1-$;

R^1 is hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)alkyl, benzyl or $-(CH_2)_p-Y$;

R^2 is hydrogen, (C_1-C_3)alkyl (which may be substituted by
 a substituent selected from the group consisting of hydroxy,
 amino, methylthio and mercapto), benzyl, 4-hydroxybenzyl, 3-

35 indolylmethyl or $-(CH_2)_p-Y$;

Y is $-CN$, $-CH_2Z$ or $-COZ$;

-54-

Z is hydroxy, amino, (C₁-C₅)alkoxy, (C₁-C₅) alkylamino or dialkylamino having from 1 to 5 carbon atoms in each alkyl moiety;

m, n and p are each, independently, 0, 1, 2 or 3; and
5 R¹ and R² may be connected to form a ring;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt of such compound, that is effective in treating or preventing such disorder.

Preferred embodiments of this invention include methods of treating or preventing a disorder of the eye selected
10 from glaucoma, ocular hypertension, miosis, hyperemia, excess lacrimation and breakdown of the blood aqueous barrier in a mammal, including a human, that comprise administering to said mammal an amount of a compound as defined in paragraph (69) below, or a pharmaceutically
15 acceptable salt thereof, that is effective in treating or preventing such disorder.

(69) A compound of the formula XV, wherein said compound is selected from the group consisting of:

(3R,4S,5S,6S)-N-carbamoylmethyl-5-(5-isopropyl-2-methoxybenzylamino)-6-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octane-3-carboxamide;

(3R,4S,5S,6S)-N-carboxymethyl-5-(5-isopropyl-2-methoxybenzylamino)-6-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octane-3-carboxamide;

25 (3R,4S,5S,6S)-3-(2-carbamoylpyrrolidin-1-yl)carbonyl-5-(5-isopropyl-2-methoxybenzylamino)-6-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octane;

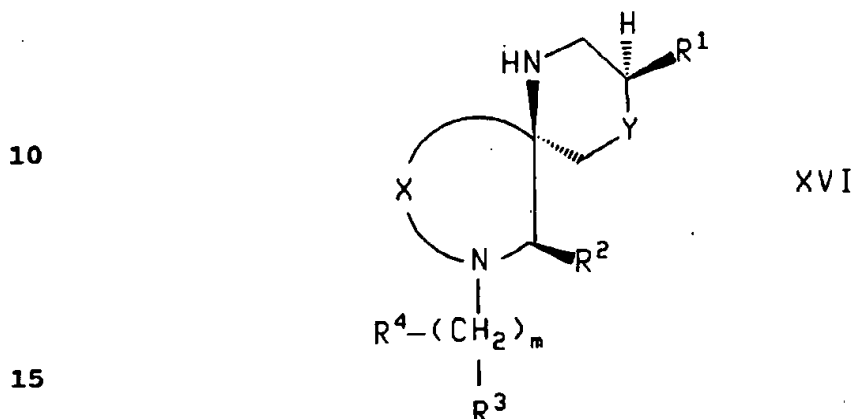
(3R*,4S*,5S*,6S*)-N-(1-carbamoylethyl)-5-(5-isopropyl-2-methoxybenzylamino)-6-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octane-3-carboxamide;

30 (3R,4S,5S,6S)-N-(1-carbamoyl-3-methylbutyl)-5-(5-isopropyl-2-methoxybenzylamino)-6-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octane-3-carboxamide; and

(3R,4S,5S,6S)-N-(2-carbamoylethyl)-5-(5-isopropyl-2-methoxybenzylamino)-6-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octane-3-carboxamide.

-55-

This invention also relates to a method of treating or preventing a disorder of the eye selected from glaucoma, ocular hypertension, miosis, hyperemia, excess lacrimation and breakdown of the blood aqueous barrier in a mammal, including a human, comprising administering to said mammal an amount of a compound of the formula



wherein R¹ is phenyl optionally substituted with one or more substituents, preferably with from one to three substituents, independently selected from hydrogen, halo, nitro, (C₁-C₁₀) alkyl optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms, (C₁-C₁₀) alkoxy optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms, trifluoromethyl, hydroxy, phenyl, cyano, amino, (C₁-C₆)-alkylamino,

25 di-(C₁-C₆)alkylamino, $\text{-}\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}\text{C-NH-(C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{)alkyl,}$

30 (C₁-C₆)alkyl- $\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}\text{C-NH-(C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{) alkyl, hydroxy(C}_1\text{-C}_4\text{)alkyl,}$

35 $\text{-NHCH}_2\text{-}, \text{-NHC-(C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{) alkyl, (C}_1\text{-C}_4\text{)alkoxy(C}_1\text{-C}_4\text{)alkyl, -S(O)}_v\text{-}$
 (C₁-C₁₀)-alkyl wherein v is zero, one or two, -S(O)_v-aryl wherein v is zero, one or two, -O-aryl, -SO₂NR⁴R⁵ wherein each of R⁴ and R⁵ is, independently, (C₁-C₆)alkyl, or R⁴ and R⁵,

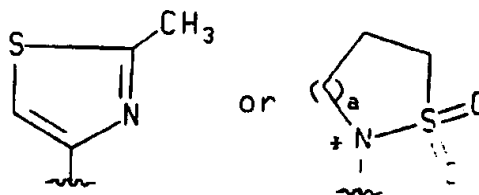
-56-

together with the nitrogen to which they are attached, form a saturated ring containing one nitrogen and from 3 to 6

- 5 carbons, $(C_1-C_{10})\text{alkyl}-N-\text{SO}_2-(C_1-C_{10})\text{alkyl}$ wherein one or both of the alkyl moieties may optionally be substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms, $-N(\text{SO}_2-(C_1-C_{10})\text{alkyl})_2$ and
- 10 $(C_1-C_{10})\text{alkyl}-N-\text{SO}_2\text{-aryl}$; and wherein the aryl moieties of said $-\text{S(O)}_2\text{-aryl}$, $-\text{O-aryl}$ and $(C_1-C_{10})\text{alkyl}-N-\text{SO}_2\text{-aryl}$ are independently selected from phenyl and benzyl and may
- 15 optionally be substituted with from one to three substituents independently selected from $(C_1-C_4)\text{alkyl}$, $(C_1-C_4)\text{alkoxy}$ and halo;

or R^1 is phenyl substituted with a group having the formula

20

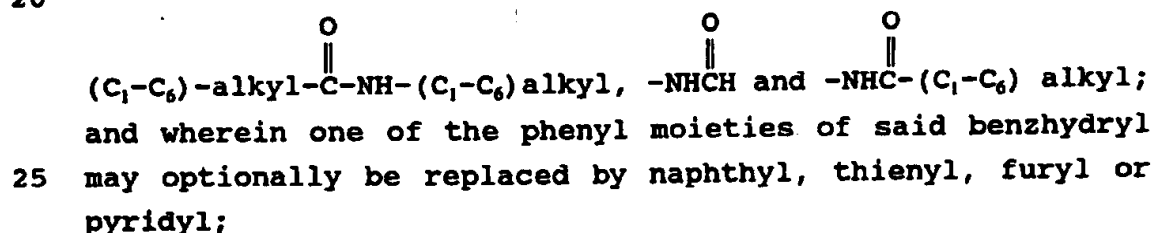
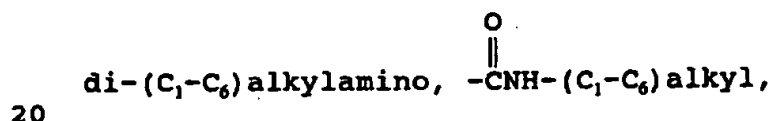
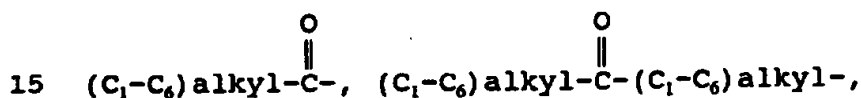
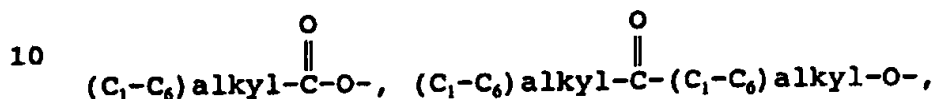
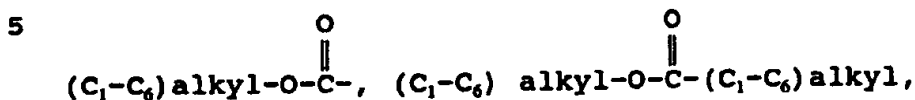


- 25 wherein a is 0, 1 or 2 and the asterisk represents a position meta to the point of attachment of R^1 ;

- R^2 is selected from (C_1-C_6) straight or branched alkyl, (C_3-C_7) cycloalkyl wherein one of the carbon atoms may optionally be replaced by nitrogen, oxygen or sulfur; aryl
- 30 selected from biphenyl, phenyl, indanyl and naphthyl; heteroaryl selected from thienyl, furyl, pyridyl, thiazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxazolyl, isoxazolyl, triazolyl, tetrazolyl and quinolyl; phenyl (C_2-C_6) alkyl, benzhydryl and benzyl, wherein each of said aryl and heteroaryl groups and the
- 35 phenyl moieties of said benzyl, phenyl (C_2-C_6) alkyl and benzhydryl may optionally be substituted with one or more substituents, preferably with from one to three substituents, independently selected from halo, nitro, (C_1-C_{10}) alkyl optionally substituted with from one to three

-57-

fluorine atoms, (C₁-C₁₀) alkoxy optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms, amino, hydroxy-(C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₁-C₆)alkoxy-(C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₁-C₆)-alkylamino,



m is an integer from 0 to 8, and any one of the carbon-carbon single bonds of (CH₂)_m, wherein both carbon atoms of such bond are bonded to each other and to another carbon atom in the (CH₂)_m chain, may optionally be replaced by a
30 carbon-carbon double bond or a carbon-carbon triple bond, and any one of the carbon atoms of said (CH₂)_m may optionally be substituted with R⁴;

35
$$R^3 \text{ is selected from } NH\overset{\overset{O}{\parallel}}{C}R^8, NHCH_2R^8, SO_2R^8, AR^9, CO_2H \text{ and the radicals set forth in the definitions of } R^2, R^6 \text{ and } R^7;$$

A is CH₂, nitrogen, oxygen, sulfur or carbonyl;

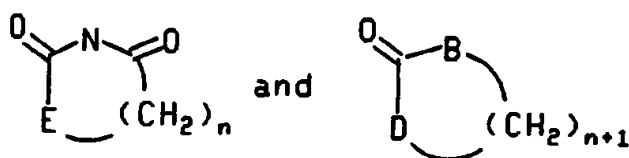
R⁸ is (C₁-C₆)alkyl, hydrogen, phenyl or phenyl (C₁-
40 C₆)alkyl;

R⁴ is selected from oximino (=NOH) and the radicals set forth in the definitions of R², R⁶ and R⁷;

R⁹ is a monocyclic or bicyclic heterocycle selected from the group consisting of pyrimidinyl, benzoxazolyl,

-58-

2,3-dihydro-3-oxobenzisulfonazol-2-yl, morpholin-1-yl, thiomorpholin-1-yl, benzofuranyl, benzothienyl, indolyl, isoindolyl, isoquinoliny, furyl, pyridyl, isothiazolyl, oxazolyl, triazolyl, tetrazolyl, quinolyl, thiazolyl, thienyl, and groups of the formulae



10

wherein B and D are selected from carbon, oxygen and nitrogen, and at least one of B and D is other than carbon; E is carbon or nitrogen; n is an integer from 1 to 5; any one of the carbon atoms of said $(\text{CH}_2)_n$ and $(\text{CH}_2)_{n+1}$ may be optionally substituted with $(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)$ alkyl or $(\text{C}_2\text{-C}_6)$ spiroalkyl; and either any one pair of the carbon atoms of said $(\text{CH}_2)_n$ and $(\text{CH}_2)_{n+1}$ may be bridged by a one or two carbon atom linkage, or any one pair of adjacent carbon atoms of said $(\text{CH}_2)_n$ and $(\text{CH}_2)_{n+1}$ may form, together with from one to three carbon atoms that are not members of the carbonyl containing ring, a $(\text{C}_3\text{-C}_5)$ fused carbocyclic ring;

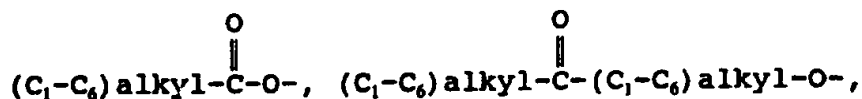
X is $(\text{CH}_2)_q$ wherein q is two or three and wherein one of the carbon-carbon single bonds in said $(\text{CH}_2)_q$ may optionally be replaced by a carbon-carbon double bond, and wherein any one of the carbon atoms of said $(\text{CH}_2)_q$ may optionally be substituted with R^6 , and wherein any one of the carbon atoms of said $(\text{CH}_2)_q$ may optionally be substituted with R^7 ;

R^6 and R^7 are independently selected from hydrogen, hydroxy, halo, amino, oxo ($=\text{O}$), cyano, hydroxy- $(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)$ alkyl, $(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)$ alkoxy- $(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)$ alkyl, $\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6$ alkylamino,

di- $(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)$ alkylamino, $(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)$ alkoxy, $-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{OH}$,

$(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{alkyl}-\text{O}-\text{C}(=\text{O})-$, $(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{alkyl}-\text{O}-\text{C}(=\text{O})-(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{alkyl}$,

-59-



5 $(C_1-C_6)\text{alkyl}-\overset{\overset{O}{\parallel}}{C}-, (C_1-C_6)\text{alkyl}-\overset{\overset{O}{\parallel}}{C}-(C_1-C_6)\text{alkyl}-$ and the radicals set forth in the definition of R^2 ; and

10 Y is $(CH_2)_z$, wherein z is zero or one;

with the proviso that: (a) when A is $-(CH_2)-$ or carbonyl, R^3 cannot be furyl, pyridyl, isothiazolyl, oxazolyl, triazolyl, tetrazolyl, quinolyl, thiazolyl or thienyl; (b) when m is zero, one of R^3 and R^4 is absent and
15 the other is hydrogen; and (c) when R^6 or R^7 is attached to a carbon atom of X that is adjacent to the ring nitrogen, then R^6 or R^7 , respectively, must be a substituent wherein the point of attachment is a carbon atom;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt of such compound,
20 that is effective in treating or preventing such disorder.

Preferred embodiments of this invention include methods of treating or preventing a disorder of the eye selected from glaucoma, ocular hypertension, miosis, hyperemia, excess lacrimation and breakdown of the blood aqueous
25 barrier in a mammal, including a human, that comprise administering to said mammal an amount of a compound as defined in paragraph (70)-(75) below, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, that is effective in treating or preventing such disorder.

30 (70) A compound of the formula XVI wherein z is one.

(71) A compound of the formula XVI wherein q is three.

(72) A compound of the formula XVI wherein q is three, m is zero, R^3 is hydrogen and R^4 is absent.

(73) A compound of the formula XVI wherein R^1 is phenyl
35 substituted with from one to three substituents independently selected from $(C_1-C_6)\text{alkyl}$ optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms and $(C_1-C_6)\text{alkyl}$ optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms.

-60-

(74) A compound of the formula XVI wherein z is one, m is zero, R^4 is absent, and each of R^3 , R^6 and R^7 is hydrogen.

(75) A compound of the formula XVI that is selected from the group consisting of:

5 (\pm) -[3R-[3 α , 6 α (R*)]]-3-phenyl-7-phenyl-1,8-diazaspiro[5.5]undecane; and

(\pm) -[3R-[3 α , 6 α (R*)]]-3-(2-methoxyphenyl)-7-phenyl-1,8-diazaspiro[5.5]undecane.

Other compounds of the formula I include the following:

10 (\pm) -[3R-[3 α , 6 α (R*)]]-3-(2-methoxy-5-trifluoromethoxyphenyl)-7-phenyl-1,8-diazaspiro[5.5]undecane;

(\pm) -[3R-[3 α , 6 α (R*)]]-3-(5-chloro-2-methoxyphenyl)-7-phenyl-1,8-diazaspiro[5.5]undecane;

(\pm) -[3R-[3 α , 6 α (R*)]]-3-(5-isopropyl-2-methoxyphenyl)-7-phenyl-1,8-diazaspiro[5.5]undecane;

15 (\pm) -[3R-[3 α , 6 α (R*)]]-3-(5-tert.butyl-2-methoxyphenyl)-7-phenyl-1,8-diazaspiro[5.5]undecane;

(\pm) -[3R-[3 α , 6 α (R*)]]-3-(2-methoxy-5-(N-methyl-N-methylsulfonylaminophenyl)-7-phenyl-1,8-diazaspiro[5.5]undecane;

20 (\pm) -[3R-[3 α , 6 α (R*)]]-3-(2-iodophenyl)-7-phenyl-1,8-diazaspiro[5.5]undecane;

(\pm) -[3R-[3 α , 6 α (R*)]]-3-(2-methoxy-4-methylphenyl)-7-phenyl-1,8-diazaspiro[5.5]undecane;

25 (\pm) -[3R-[3 α , 6 α (R*)]]-3-(2-isopropoxyphenyl)-7-phenyl-1,8-diazaspiro[5.5]undecane;

(\pm) -[3R-[3 α , 6 α (R*)]]-3-(2-difluoromethoxy-5-trifluoromethoxyphenyl)-7-phenyl-1,8-diazaspiro[5.5]undecane;

30 (\pm) -[3R-[3 α , 5 α (R*)]]-3-(2-methoxyphenyl)-6-phenyl-1,7-diazaspiro[4.5]decane;

(\pm) -[3R-[3 α , 5 α (R*)]]-3-(2-methoxy-5-trifluoromethoxyphenyl)-6-phenyl-1,7-diazaspiro[4.5]decane;

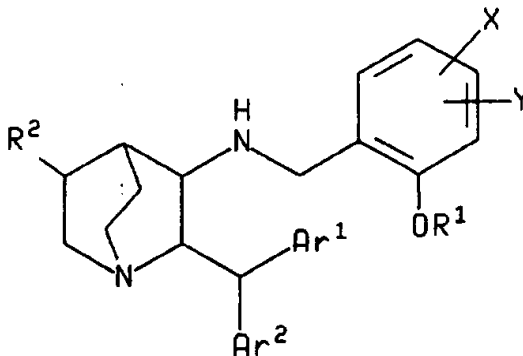
35 (\pm) -[3R-[3 α , 5 α (R*)]]-3-(5-chloro-2-methoxyphenyl)-6-phenyl-1,7-diazaspiro[4.5]decane;

-61-

(±)-[3R-[3α, 5α (R*)]]-3-(5-isopropyl-2-methoxyphenyl)-6-phenyl-1,7-diazaspiro[4.5]decane; and

(±)-[3R-[3α, 5α (R*)]]-3-(5-tert.butyl-2-methoxyphenyl)-6-phenyl-1,7-diazaspiro[4.5]decane.

5 This invention also relates to a method of treating or preventing a disorder of the eye selected from glaucoma, ocular hypertension, miosis, hyperemia, excess lacrimation and breakdown of the blood aqueous barrier in a mammal, including a human, comprising administering to said mammal
10 an amount of a compound of the formula



XVII

wherein Ar¹ and Ar² are each independently aryl or substituted aryl;

25 R¹ is alkyl having from 1 to 6 carbon atoms;

R² is hydrogen or alkyl having from 1 to 6 carbon atoms;

and either X and Y are taken separately and they are each, independently, hydrogen, dialkylphosphoryl having from 2 to 12 carbon atoms, alkyl having from 1 to 6 carbon atoms;

30 or X and Y are taken together and they represent a hydrocarbon chain having 3, 4, or 5 carbon atoms, optionally containing up to 2 double bonds and optionally having 1 or 2 substituents selected from oxo, hydroxy and alkyl having from 1 to 6 carbon atoms;

35 provided that when X and Y are taken together they are attached to adjacent carbon atoms; and

-62-

provided that if either X or Y is hydrogen, then the other one must be alkenyl or alkynyl;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, that is effective in treating or preventing such disorder.

5 The term "alkylthio" is used in formula XVII to mean -SR⁴ (R⁴ is alkyl) including, but not limited to, methylthio, ethylthio, n-propylthio, isopropylthio, n-butylthio, isobutylthio, t-butylthio and the like.

10 The term "dialkylphosphoryl" is used in formula XVII to mean -P(O)(OR⁵)(OR⁶) (R⁵ and R⁶ are alkyl) including, but not limited to, diethylphosphoryl, ethylmethylphosphoryl and the like.

15 Preferred embodiments of this invention include methods of treating or preventing a disorder of the eye selected from glaucoma, ocular hypertension, miosis, hyperemia, excess lacrimation and breakdown of the blood aqueous barrier in a mammal, including a human, that comprise administering to said mammal an amount of a compound as defined in paragraphs (76) - (79) below, or a
20 pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, that is effective in treating or preventing such disorder.

(76) Compounds of formula XVII wherein Ar¹ and Ar² are each phenyl, R¹ is methyl, R² is hydrogen, X is alkenyl or alkynyl and Y is hydrogen.

25 (77) Compounds of the formula XVII wherein Ar¹ and Ar² are each phenyl, R¹ is methyl, R² is hydrogen and X and Y are each alkyl.

(78) Compounds of the formula XVII wherein Ar¹ and Ar² are each phenyl, R¹ is methyl, R² is hydrogen and X and Y
30 represent CH₂CH₂CH₂ or CH₂CH₂CH₂CH₂.

(79) A compound of the formula XVII that is selected from:

(2S,3S)-N-(5-Isopropenyl-2-methoxyphenyl)methyl-2-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octan-3-amine;

35 (2S,3S)-N-(2-Methoxy-5-vinylphenyl)methyl-2-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octan-3-amine;

-63-

(2S,3S)-N-(2-Methoxy-4,5-dimethylphenyl)methyl-2-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octan-3-amine;

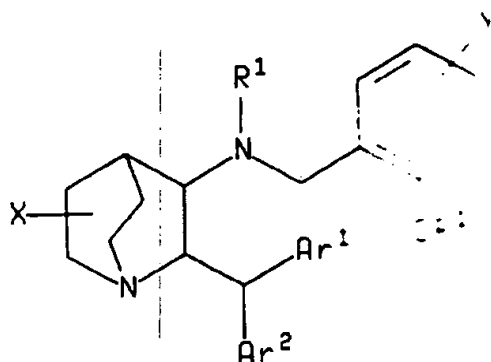
(2S,3S)-N-(5,6,7,8-Tetrahydro-3-methoxy-2-naphthyl)methyl-2-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octan-3-amine;

(2S,3S)-N-(5-Methoxyindan-6-yl)methyl-6-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octan-3-amine;

(2S,3S)-3-(2,4-Dimethoxy-5-ethylbenzylamino)-2-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octane; and

(2S,3S)-2-Diphenylmethyl-N-[2-methoxy-5-(diethylphosphoryl)phenyl]methyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octan-3-amine.

This invention also relates to a method of treating or preventing a disorder of the eye selected from glaucoma, ocular hypertension, miosis, hyperemia, excess lacrimation and breakdown of the blood aqueous barrier in a mammal, including a human, comprising administering to said mammal an amount of a compound of the formula



XVIII

wherein Ar¹ and Ar² are each, independently, thienyl, phenyl, fluorophenyl, chlorophenyl or bromophenyl;

X is -CONR³R⁴, -CO₂R³, -CH₂OR³, -CH₂NR³R⁴ or -CONR³OR⁴;

R¹, R³ and R⁴ are each, independently, hydrogen or alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms;

R² is alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms;

-64-

Y is alkylsulfonyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, N-alkyl-N-alkanoylamino (which may be substituted by halogen in the alkanoyl moiety) having 1 to 4 carbon atoms in the alkyl and the alkanoyl moieties, N-alkyl-N-alkylsulfonylamino (which
5 may be substituted by halogen in the alkylsulfonyl moiety) having 1 to 4 carbon atoms in the alkyl and the alkyl sulfonyl moieties, alkenyl having 2 to 4 carbon atoms, alkynyl having 2 to 4 carbon atoms, halosubstituted alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, alkylamino having 1 to 4 carbon
10 atoms, alkanoylamino (which may be substituted by halogen) having 1 to 4 carbon atoms or alkylsulfonylamino (which may be substituted by halogen) having 1 to 4 carbon atoms;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, that is effective in treating or preventing disorder.

15 Preferred embodiments of this invention include methods of treating or preventing a disorder of the eye selected from glaucoma, ocular hypertension, miosis, hyperemia, excess lacrimation and breakdown of the blood aqueous barrier in a mammal, including a human, that comprise
20 administering to said mammal an amount of a compound as defined in paragraphs (80) - (86) below, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, that is effective in treating or preventing such disorder.

(80) A compound of the formula XVIII wherein Ar¹ and Ar²
25 are each phenyl.

(81) A compound as described in paragraph (80) wherein R² is methyl and R¹ is hydrogen.

(82) A compound as described in paragraph (81) wherein X is at the 3-position of the quinuclidine ring and X is
30 carboxy or aminocarbonyl.

(83) A compound as described in paragraph (82) wherein Y is said alkenyl.

(84) A compound as described in paragraph (83) wherein Y is isopropenyl.

-65-

(85) A compound as described in paragraph (82) wherein Y is methylsulfonyl, N-acetyl-N-methylamino or N-methyl-N-methylsulfonylamino.

(86) A compound of the formula XVIII that is selected from:

(3R,4S,5S,6S)-5-(5-Isopropenyl-2-methoxybenzyl-amino)-6-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octane-3-carboxamide;

(3R,4S,5S,6S)-6-Diphenylmethyl-5-(2-methoxy-5-methylsulfonylbenzylamino)-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octane-3-carboxamide;

(3R,4S,5S,6S)-5-[5-(N-Acetyl-N-methylamino)-2-methoxybenzylamino]-6-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octane-3-carboxamide;

(3R,4S,5S,6S)-6-Diphenylmethyl-5-[2-methoxy-5-(N-methyl-N-methylsulfonylamino)benzylamino]-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octane-3-carboxamide; and

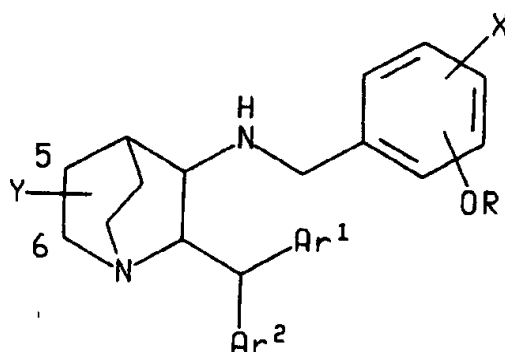
(3R,4S,5S,6S)-6-Diphenylmethyl-5-(2-methoxy-5-methylsulfonylbenzylamino)-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octane-3-carboxylic acid.

This invention also relates to a method of treating or preventing a disorder of the eye selected from glaucoma, ocular hypertension, miosis, hyperemia, excess lacrimation and breakdown of the blood aqueous barrier in a mammal, including a human, comprising administering to said mammal a compound of the formula

30

35

-66-



XIX

wherein R is C₁-C₆ alkyl;

X is C₁-C₆ alkyl having one or more substituents bonded
15 through a heteroatom;

Ar¹ and Ar² are each, independently, aryl optionally
substituted by one C₁-C₆ alkyl, C₁-C₆ alkoxy, C₁-C₆ alkylthio,
halogen, cyano, nitro, phenoxy, mono C₁-C₆ alkylamino, di C₁-
C₆ alkylamino, halosubstituted C₁-C₆ alkyl, or halosubstituted
20 C₁-C₆ alkoxy;

Y is hydrogen, C₁-C₆ alkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₃-C₆
cycloalkyl, Z-(CH₂)_p-, or W-(CH₂)_m-CHR²-(CH₂)_n-NR¹CO- wherein Y
is at the 4-, 5- or 6-position on the quinuclidine ring;

R¹ is hydrogen, C₁-C₆ alkyl, benzyl or -(CH₂)_n-W;

25 R² is hydrogen or C₁-C₆ alkyl which may be substituted by
one hydroxy, amino, methylthio, mercapto, benzyl, 4-
hydroxybenzyl, 3-indolylmethyl or -(CH₂)_n-W;

Z is C₁-C₆ alkoxy, -CONR⁴R⁵, -CO₂R⁴, -CHR⁴OR⁵, -CHR⁴NR⁵R⁶,
-COR⁴, -CONR⁴OR⁵ or optionally substituted aryl;

30 each W is independently cyano, hydroxymethyl, C₂-C₆
alkoxymethyl, aminomethyl, mono C₁-C₆ alkylaminomethyl, di C₁-
C₆ alkylaminomethyl, carboxyl, carbamoyl or C₁-C₆
alkoxycarbonyl;

R⁴, R⁵ and R⁶ are independently hydrogen, C₁-C₆ alkyl, C₁-
35 C₆ alkoxy, C₃-C₆ cycloalkyl or an optionally substituted aryl
or heterocyclic group;

-67-

p is 0 to 6; and

m, n and r are each, independently, 0 to 3;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, that is effective in treating or preventing such disorder.

5 Preferred embodiments of this invention include methods of treating or preventing a disorder of the eye selected from glaucoma, ocular hypertension, miosis, hyperemia, excess lacrimation and breakdown of the blood aqueous barrier in a mammal, including a human, that comprise
10 administering to said mammal an amount of a compound as defined in paragraphs (87) - (91) below, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, that is effective in treating or preventing such disorder.

(87) A compound of the formula XIX wherein X is C₁-C₆
15 alkyl having one or two substituents selected from hydroxy, halogen, C₁-C₆ alkoxy, C₂-C₆ alkanoyl, C₂-C₆ alkanoyloxy, C₁-C₆ alkylthio, mono C₁-C₆ alkylamino, di C₁-C₆ alkylamino, amino, cyano and azido.

(88) A compound of the formula XIX as described in
20 paragraph (87) wherein R is methyl and the OR group is at the 2-position; Ar¹ and Ar² are each phenyl, monochlorophenyl or monofluorophenyl; Y is hydrogen or Z-(CH₂)_p-, wherein Z is C₁-C₆ alkoxy, -CONR⁴R⁵, -CO₂R⁴, -CHR⁴OR⁵, -CHR⁴NR⁵R⁶, -COR⁴ or -CONR⁴OR⁵; and Y is at the 5- or 6-position.

25 (89) A compound as described in paragraph (88) wherein X is C₁-C₆ alkyl having one or two substituents selected from hydroxy, C₁-C₆ alkoxy and C₁-C₆ alkylthio; Ar¹ and Ar² are each phenyl; and Y is hydrogen or carboxy.

(90) A compound is described in paragraph (89) wherein
30 X is -C(CH₃)₂OH, -C(OH)(CH₃)CH₂OH, -C(CH₃)₂OCH₃ or -C(CH₃)₂SCH₂CH₃.

(91) A compound as described in paragraph (90) that is selected from:

(2S,3S)-N-[5-(1-hydroxy-1-methylethyl)-2-methoxy-
35 phenyl]methyl-2-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octan-3-amine;

-68-

(2S,3S)-N-[2-methoxy-5-(1-methoxy-1-methylethyl)-phenyl]methyl-2-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octan-3-amine;

(3R,4S,5S,6S)-3-[5-(1-hydroxy-1-methylethyl)-2-methoxyphenyl]methylamino-6-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octan-5-carboxylic acid;

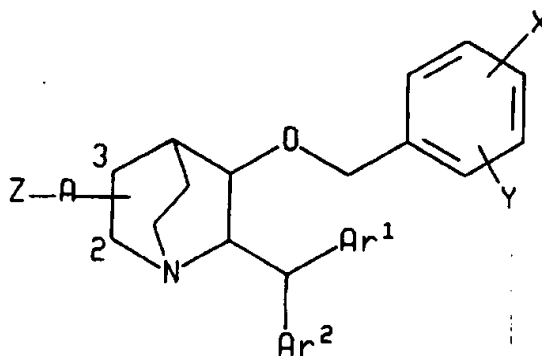
(2S,3S)-2-diphenylmethyl-N-[5-(1-hydroxy-1-hydroxymethylethyl)-2-methoxyphenyl]methyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octan-3-amine;

(3R,4S,5S,6S)-3-[5-(1-methoxy-1-methylethyl)-2-methoxyphenyl]methylamino-6-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octan-5-carboxylic acid;

(3R,4S,5S,6S)-3-[5-(1-hydroxy-1-methylethyl)-2-methoxyphenyl]methylamino-6-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octan-5-carboxylic acid; and

(3R,4S,5S,6S)-3-[5-(1-ethylthio-1-methylethyl)-2-methoxyphenyl]methylamino-6-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octan-5-carboxylic acid.

This invention also relates to a method of treating or preventing a disorder of the eye selected from glaucoma, ocular hypertension, miosis, hyperemia, excess lacrimation and breakdown of the blood aqueous barrier in a mammal, including a human, comprising administering to said mammal a compound of the formula



XX

-69-

wherein X and Y are each hydrogen, halo, C₁-C₆ alkyl, halosubstituted C₁-C₆ alkyl, C₁-C₆ alkoxy, C₁-C₆ alkylthio, C₁-C₆ alkylsulfinyl, C₁-C₆ alkylsulfonyl or tri C₁-C₆ alkylsilyl;

Ar¹ and Ar² are each aryl optionally substituted by
5 halo;

A is -CO- or -(CH₂)-;

Z-A- is at the 2 or 3 position on the quinuclidine ring;

Z is hydroxy, C₁-C₆ alkoxy, NR¹R² or W¹-(CH₂)_n-CHR⁴-(CH₂)_s-
10 NR³ wherein

R¹ and R², when taken separately, are each hydrogen or C₁-C₆ alkyl;

R¹ and R², when taken together with the nitrogen atom to which they are attached, represent piperidino, pyrrolidino,
15 morpholino, thiomorpholino or piperazino;

R³ is hydrogen, C₁-C₆ alkyl, benzyl or -(CH₂)_n-W²;

R⁴ is hydrogen or C₁-C₆ alkyl which may be substituted by hydroxy, amino, methylthio, mercapto, benzyl, 4-hydroxybenzyl, 3-indolylmethyl or -(CH₂)_n-W³;

20 R³ and R⁴, when taken together, represent CH₂ or CH₂CH₂;

W¹, W² and W³ are each cyano, hydroxymethyl, C₂-C₆ alkoxymethyl, aminomethyl, (C₁-C₆ alkylamino)methyl, (di C₁-C₆ alkylamino)methyl, carboxyl, (C₁-C₆ alkyl)carbamoyl, or (di C₁-C₆ alkyl)carbamoyl, carbamoyl or (C₁-C₆ alkoxy)carbonyl;

25 and

m, n, r and s are each 0, 1, 2 or 3;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof that is effective in treating or preventing such disorder.

As used in formula XX, the term "alkylthio" means -S-alkyl, including but not limited to methylsulfinyl, ethylsulfinyl, isopropylsulfinyl and the like;

As used in formula XX, the term "alkylsulfonyl" means -SO₂-alkyl including but not limited to methylsulfonyl, ethylsulfonyl, isopropylsulfonyl and the like; and

35 As used in formula XX, the term "aryl" means aromatic radicals including but not limited to phenyl, naphthyl,

-70-

pyridyl, quinolyl, thienyl, furyl, oxazolyl, tetrazolyl, thiazolyl, imidazolyl, pyrazolyl and the like. These aryl groups can be substituted by C₁-C₆ alkyl, C₁-C₆ alkoxy, C₁-C₆ alkylthio, halogen, cyano, nitro, phenoxy, mono- or di-C₁-C₆ alkylamino and the like.

Preferred embodiments of this invention include methods of treating or preventing a disorder of the eye selected from glaucoma, ocular hypertension, miosis, hyperemia, excess lacrimation and breakdown of the blood aqueous barrier in a mammal, including a human, that comprise administering to said mammal an amount of a compound as defined in paragraph (92) below, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, that is effective in treating or preventing such disorder.

(92) A compound of the formula XX that is selected from the group consisting of:

(3S,4R,5S,6S)-N-carbamoylmethyl-6-diphenylmethyl-5-(3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyloxy)-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octane-3-carboxamide;

(3S,4R,5S,6S)-6-diphenylmethyl-5-(3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyloxy)-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octane-3-carboxamide;

(3S,4R,5S,6S)-N,N-(3-oxa-1,5-pentylene)-6-diphenylmethyl-5-(3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyloxy)-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octane-3-carboxamide;

(3S,4R,5S,6S)-6-diphenylmethyl-5-(3,5-dimethylbenzyloxy)-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octane-3-carboxylic acid;

(3S,4R,5S,6S)-N,N-diethyl-6-diphenylmethyl-5-(3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyloxy)-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octane-3-carboxamide;

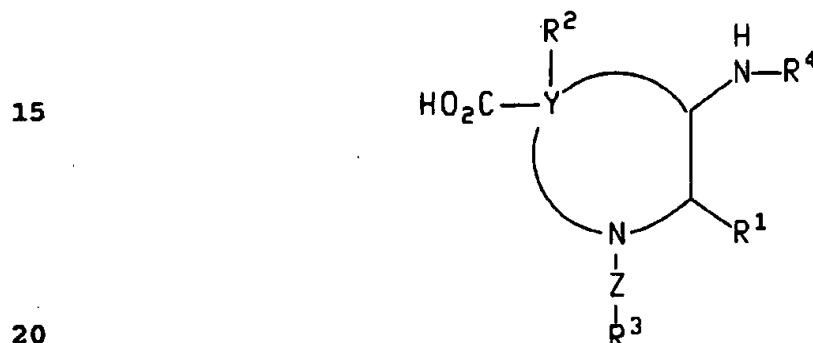
(3S,4R,5S,6S)-6-diphenylmethyl-5-(3-fluoro-5-trifluoromethylbenzyloxy)-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octane-3-carboxylic acid;

-71-

(3S,4R,5S,6S)-6-diphenylmethyl-5-(3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyloxy)-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octane-3-carboxylic acid; and

(3S,4R,5S,6S)-N,N-dimethyl-6-diphenylmethyl-5-(3,5-bis(trifluoromethyl)benzyloxy)-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octane-3-carboxamide.

This invention also relates to a method of treating or preventing a disorder of the eye selected from glaucoma, ocular hypertension, miosis, hyperemia, excess lacrimation and breakdown of the blood aqueous barrier in a mammal, including a human, comprising administering to said mammal a compound of the formula



XXI

wherein Y is C₂-C₄ alkylene;

25 Z is a valence bond or C₁-C₆ alkylene;

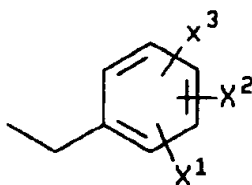
R¹ is phenyl, biphenyl, indanyl, naphthyl, thienyl, furyl, pyridyl, thiazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxazolyl, isoxazolyl, tetrazolyl, quinolyl, phenyl C₁-C₆ alkyl- or benzhydryl, wherein each of the ring moieties may optionally be substituted by one or more substituents independently selected from halogen, C₁-C₆ alkyl, halosubstituted C₁-C₆ alkyl, C₁-C₆ alkoxy and halosubstituted C₁-C₆ alkoxy;

R² is hydrogen or C₁-C₆ alkyl;

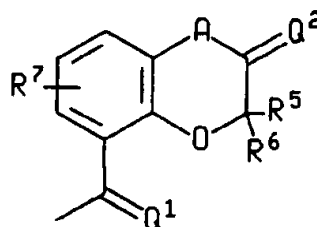
R³ is, hydrogen, hydroxy, cyano, amino or carboxy; and

35 R⁴ represents a group of the formula (II) or (III)

-72-



II



III

wherein X^1 , X^2 and X^3 are each halo, hydrogen, nitro, C_1-C_6 alkyl, halosubstituted C_1-C_6 alkoxy, halosubstituted C_1-C_6 alkoxy, hydroxy, amino, C_1-C_6 alkylthio, C_1-C_6 alkylsulfinyl or C_1-C_6 alkylsulfonyl;

Q^1 and Q^2 are each H , oxygen or sulfur;

A is valence bond, methylene, oxygen, sulfur or NH;

R^5 and R^6 are each hydrogen or C_1-C_6 alkyl; and

R^6 is hydrogen, halogen, C_1-C_6 alkyl, halosubstituted C_1-C_6 alkyl or C_1-C_6 alkoxy;

provided that when Z is a valence bond, R^3 must be hydrogen;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, that is effective in treating or preventing such disorder.

Preferred embodiments of this invention include methods of treating or preventing a disorder of the eye selected from glaucoma, ocular hypertension, miosis, hyperemia, excess lacrimation and breakdown of the blood aqueous barrier in a mammal, including a human, that comprise administering to said mammal an amount of a compound as defined in paragraph (93) below, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, that is effective in treating or preventing such disorder.

(93) A compound of the form XXI that is selected from:

(2S*,3S*,4S*,5R*)-4-carboxy-3-[N-(5-isopr pyl-2-methoxybenzyl)amino]-5-methyl-2-phenylpyrrolidine and

(2S*,3S*,5S*)-5-carboxy-3-[N-(2-methoxy-5-trifluoromethoxybenzyl)amino]-2-phenylpiperidine.

-73-

The term "halo", as used herein, unless otherwise indicated, includes chloro, fluoro, bromo and iodo.

The term "alkyl", as used herein, unless otherwise indicated, includes saturated monovalent hydrocarbon radicals having straight, branched or cyclic moieties or combinations thereof.

The term "alkenyl", as used herein, unless otherwise indicated, refers to straight or branched hydrocarbon chain radicals having one double bond including, but not limited to, ethenyl, 1- and 2-propenyl, 2-methyl-1-propenyl, 1- and 2-butenyl.

The term "alkoxy", as used herein, unless otherwise indicated, refers to -O-alkyl, wherein alkyl is defined as above, and includes, but is not limited to methoxy, ethoxy, propoxy, isopropoxy, n-butoxy, isobutoxy and t-butoxy.

The term "alkylthio", as used herein, unless otherwise indicated, refers to -S-alkyl, wherein alkyl is defined as above, and includes, but is not limited to methylthio, ethylthio, n-propylthio, isopropylthio, n-butylthio, isobutylthio, and t-butylthio.

The term "cycloalkyl", as used herein, unless otherwise indicated, refers to cyclic hydrocarbon radicals including, but not limited to cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl and cyclohexyl.

The term "one or more substituents," as used herein, includes from one to the maximum number of substituents possible based on the number of available bonding sites.

The term "excess lacrimation", as used herein, refers to a degree of lacrimation that is higher than the desired degree of lacrimation.

Compounds of the formulae I, X, XI, XII, XIII, XIV, XV, XVI, XVII, XVIII, XIX, XX and XXI contain chiral centers and therefore exist in different enantiomeric forms. The above definitions of these compounds include all optical isomers and all stereoisomers of such compounds, and mixtures thereof.

-74-

Detailed Description of the Invention

The compounds of the formulae Ia, Ib, Ic, Id, Ie, X, XI, XII, XIII, XIV, XV, XVI, XVII, XVIII, XIX, XX and XXI may be prepared as described below. Unless otherwise
5 indicated, in the discussion that follows, structural formulae Ia, Ib, Ic, Id, Ie, X, XI XII, XIII, XIV, XV, XVI, XVII, XVIII, XIX, XX and XXI and groups II, III, IV, V, VI, VII, VIII and IX are defined as above.

Compounds of the formula Ia and Ib may be prepared as
10 described in United States Patent Application 988,653, which was filed on December 10, 1992. This application is incorporated herein by reference in its entirety.

Compounds of the formula Ic may be prepared as described in United States Patent Application 932,392, which
15 was filed on August 19, 1992, and PCT Patent Application PCT/US 93/09407, which designates the United States and which was filed in the United States Receiving Office on October 7, 1993 and published as WO 94/13663 on June 23, 1994. These applications are incorporated herein by
20 reference in their entirety.

Compounds of the formula Id may be prepared as described in PCT Patent Application PCT/US 92/03571, which designates the United States and which was filed in the United States Receiving Office on May 5, 1992 and published
25 as WO 93/00331 on January 7, 1993. This application is incorporated herein by reference in its entirety.

Compounds of the formula Ie may be prepared as described in United States Patent Application 123,306, which was filed on September 17, 1993 and in PCT Patent
30 Application PCT/IB 94/00221, which designates the United States and which was filed in the International Bureau on July 18, 1994. This application is incorporated herein by reference in its entirety.

When R³ is a group of the formula II, the starting
35 materials of the formula NH₂R³ that are used in the preparation of compounds of the formulae Ia, Ib, Ic, Id and

-75-

Ie may be prepared as described in United States Patent 5,162,339, which issued on November 11, 1992. This patent is incorporated herein by reference in its entirety.

When R^3 is a group of the formula III, the starting materials of the formula NH_2R^3 that are used in the preparation of compounds of the formulae Ia, Ib, Ic, Id and Ie may be prepared as described in PCT Patent Application PCT/US 91/02853, which designates the United States, was filed in the United States Receiving Office on April 25, 1991 and was published as WO 91/18899 on December 12, 1991. This application is incorporated herein by reference in its entirety.

When R^3 is a group of the formula IV, V or VI, the starting materials of the formula NH_2R^3 that are used in the preparation of compounds of the formulae Ia, Ib, Ic, Id and Ie may be prepared as described in PCT Patent Application PCT/US 91/03369, which designates the United States, was filed on in the United States Receiving Office May 14, 1991 and was published as WO 92/01688 on February 6, 1992. This application is incorporated herein by reference in its entirety.

When R^3 is a group of the formula VII, the starting materials of the formula NH_2R^3 that are used in the preparation of compounds of the formulae Ia, Ib, Ic, Id and Ie may be prepared as described in United States Patent 5,232,929, which issued on August 3, 1993, United States Patent Application 800,667, filed November 27, 1991, PCT Patent Application PCT/US 91/02541, which designates the United States, was filed in the United States Receiving Office on April 12, 1991 and was published as WO 91/18878 on December 12, 1991, and PCT Patent Application PCT/US 92/00065, which designates the United States, was filed in the United States Receiving Office on January 14, 1992 and was published as WO 92/17449 on October 15, 1992. These applications are incorporated herein by reference in their entirety.

-76-

When R^3 is a group of the formula VIII, the starting materials of the formula NH_2R^3 that are used in the preparation of compounds of the formulae Ia, Ib, Ic, Id and Ie may be prepared as described in PCT Patent Application 5 PCT/US 91/05776, which designates the United States, was filed in the United States Receiving Office on August 20, 1991 and was published as WO 92/06079 on April 16, 1992, United States Patent Application 800,667, filed November 27, 1991 and PCT Patent Application PCT/US 92/00065, which 10 designates the United States, was filed in the United States Receiving Office on January 14, 1992 and was published as WO 92/17449 on October 15, 1992. These applications are incorporated herein by reference in their entirety.

When R^3 is a group of the formula IX, the starting 15 materials of the formula NH_2R^3 that are used in the preparation of compounds of the formulae Ia, Ib, Ic, Id and Ie may be prepared as described in United States Patent Application Serial No. 719,884, filed June 21, 1991 and PCT Patent Application PCT/US 92/04697, which designates the 20 United States and which was filed in the United States Receiving Office on June 11, 1992 and published as WO 93/00330 on January 7, 1993. These applications are incorporated herein by reference in their entirety.

Compounds of the formula X may be prepared as described 25 in PCT Patent Application PCT/US 92/04002, which designates the United States, was filed in the United States Receiving Office on May 19, 1992 and was published as WO 92/15585 on September 17, 1992. This application is incorporated herein by reference in its entirety.

30 Compounds of the formula XI may be prepared as described in PCT Patent Application PCT/US 92/04697, which designates the United States, and which was filed in the United States Receiving Office on June 11, 1992 and published as WO 93/00330 on January 7, 1993. This 35 application is incorporated herein by reference in its entirety.

-77-

Compounds of the formula XII may be prepared as described in PCT Patent Application PCT/US 92/07730, which designates the United States and which was filed in the United States Receiving Office on September 18, 1992 and
5 published as WO 93/10073 on May 27, 1993. This application is incorporated herein by reference in its entirety.

Compounds of the formula XIII may be prepared as described in PCT Patent Application PCT/US 92/06819, which designates the United States and which was filed in the
10 United States Receiving Office on August 20, 1992 and published as WO 93/06099 on April 1, 1993. This application is incorporated herein by reference in its entirety.

Compounds of the formula XIV may be prepared as described in United States Patent Application 885,110, which
15 was filed on May 18, 1992 and in PCT Patent Application PCT/US 93/01429, which designates the United States and which was filed in the United States Receiving Office on February 23, 1993 and published as WO 93/23380 on November 25, 1993. These applications are incorporated herein by
20 reference in their entirety.

Compounds of the formula XV may be prepared by the procedure described in PCT Patent Application PCT/US 92/04002, which designates the United States, was filed on
May 19, 1992 and published as WO 92/20676 on November 26,
25 1992. This application is incorporated herein by reference in its entirety.

Compounds of the formula XVI may be prepared as described in United States Patent Application 026,382, which was filed on April 7, 1993, and PCT Patent Application
30 PCT/US 93/11793, which designates the United States, and which was filed on December 10, 1993 in the U.S. Receiving Office and published as WO 94/20500 on September 15, 1994. These applications are incorporated herein by reference in their entirety.

35 Compounds of the formula XVII may be prepared as described in PCT Patent Application PCT/US 93/09169, which

-78-

designates the United States and which was filed in the U.S. Receiving Office on September 30, 1993 and published as WO 94/10170 on May 11, 1994. This application is incorporated herein by reference in its entirety.

5 Compounds of the formula XVIII may be prepared as described in PCT Patent Application PCT/US 93/09168, which designates the United States and which was filed in the U.S. Receiving Office on September 30, 1993 and published as WO 94/08997 on April 28, 1994. This application is
10 incorporated herein by reference in its entirety.

Compounds of the formula XIX may be prepared as described in PCT Patent Application PCT/JP 94/00781, which designates the United States and which was filed in the Japanese Receiving Office on May 13, 1994. This application
15 is incorporated herein by reference in its entirety.

Compounds of the formula XX may be prepared as described in PCT Patent Application PCT/JP 94/01092, which designates the United States and was filed in the Japanese Receiving Office on July 5, 1994. This application is
20 incorporated herein by reference in its entirety.

Compounds of the formula XXI may be prepared as described in PCT Patent Application PCT/JP 94/01514, which designates the United States and was filed in the Japanese Receiving Office on September 13, 1994. This application is
25 incorporated herein by reference in its entirety.

The compounds of the formulae Ia, Ib, Ic, Id, Ie, X, XI, XII, XIII, XIV, XV, XVI, XVII, XVIII and XIX (hereinafter referred to, collectively, as the "therapeutic agents") and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof
30 are useful as substance P receptor antagonists, i.e., they possess the ability to antagonize the effects of tachykinins at the substance P receptor site in mammals. They and other NK-1 antagonists are able to function as therapeutic agents in the treatment and prevention of disorders of the eye such
35 as glaucoma, ocular hypertension, miosis, excess lacrimation.

-79-

and breakdown of the blood aqueous barrier in mammals, including humans.

The therapeutic agents that are basic in nature are capable of forming a wide variety of different salts with various inorganic and organic acids. Examples of acids that form suitable pharmaceutically acceptable salts for use in this invention are those that form non-toxic acid addition salts, i.e., salts containing pharmacologically acceptable anions, such as the hydrochloride, hydrobromide, hydroiodide, nitrate, sulfate, bisulfate, phosphate, acid phosphate, acetate, lactate, citrate, acid citrate, tartrate, bitartrate, succinate, maleate, fumarate, gluconate, saccharate, benzoate, methanesulfonate, ethanesulfonate, benzenesulfonate, p-toluenesulfonate and pamoate [i.e., 1,1'-methylene-bis-(2-hydroxy-3-naphthoate)]salts.

Although such salts must be pharmaceutically acceptable for administration to animals, it is often desirable in practice to initially isolate a therapeutic agent from the reaction mixture as a pharmaceutically unacceptable salt and then simply convert the latter back to the free base compound by treatment with an alkaline reagent and subsequently convert the latter free base to a pharmaceutically acceptable acid addition salt. The acid addition salts of the base therapeutic agents of this invention are readily prepared by treating the base compound with a substantially equivalent amount of the chosen mineral or organic acid in an aqueous solvent medium or in a suitable organic solvent, such as methanol or ethanol. Upon careful evaporation of the solvent, the desired solid salt is readily obtained.

Those therapeutic agents of this invention that are also acidic in nature are capable of forming base salts with various pharmacologically acceptable cations. The chemical bases that are used as reagents to prepare the pharmaceutically acceptable base salts of the therapeutic

-80-

agents are those that form non-toxic base salts with the acidic therapeutic agents. Such non-toxic base salts include those derived from such pharmacologically acceptable cations as sodium, potassium, calcium and magnesium, etc.

5 These salts can easily be prepared by treating the corresponding acidic compounds with an aqueous solution containing the desired pharmacologically acceptable cations, and then evaporating the resulting solution to dryness, preferably under reduced pressure. Alternatively, they may

10 also be prepared by mixing lower alkanolic solutions of the acidic compounds and the desired alkali metal alkoxide together, and then evaporating the resulting solution to dryness in the same manner as before. In either case, stoichiometric quantities of reagents are preferably

15 employed in order to ensure completeness of reaction and maximum yields of the desired final product.

As indicated above, therapeutic agents and their pharmaceutically acceptable salts exhibit substance P receptor binding activity. They and other NK-1 antagonists

20 are of value in the treatment and prevention of glaucoma, ocular hypertension, miosis, excess lacrimation and breakdown of the blood aqueous barrier in mammals, including humans.

Other substance P receptor antagonists that are

25 expected to exhibit activity for the treatment and prevention of the foregoing eye disorders in mammals, including humans, are those compounds described in the following references: European Patent Application EP 499,313, published August 19, 1992; European Patent

30 Application EP 520,555, published December 30, 1992; European Patent Application EP 522,808, published January 13, 1993, European Patent Application EP 528,495, published February 24, 1993, PCT Patent Application WO 93/14084, published July 22, 1993, PCT Patent Application WO 93/01169,

35 published January 21, 1993, PCT Patent Application WO 93/01165, published January 21, 1993, PCT Patent Application

-81-

WO 93/01159, published January 21, 1993, PCT Patent Application WO 92/20661, published November 26, 1992, European Patent Application EP 517,589, published December 12, 1992, European Patent Application EP 428,434, published May 22, 1991, and European Patent Application EP 360,390, published March 28, 1990.

The therapeutic agents and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof, as well as other NK-1 antagonists, can be administered via either the oral, topical or parenteral routes. In general, these compounds are most desirably administered in dosages ranging from about 5.0 mg up to about 1500 mg per day, although variations will necessarily occur depending upon the weight and condition of the subject being treated and the particular route of administration chosen. However, a dosage level that is in the range of about 0.001 mg to about 21 mg per kg of body weight per day is most desirably employed. The preferred dosage for oral administration is from about 0.001 to about 5 mg per kg of body weight per day. Ointments or eyedrops will preferably contain the active agent in a concentration of about 0.01 to about 5 percent, more preferably about 1%.

Variations may nevertheless occur depending upon the species of animal being treated and its individual response to said medicament, as well as on the type of pharmaceutical formulation chosen and the time period and interval at which such administration is carried out. In some instances, dosage levels below the lower limit of the aforesaid range may be more than adequate, while in other cases still larger doses may be employed without causing any harmful side effect, provided that such larger doses are first divided into several small doses for administration throughout the day.

The therapeutic agents, and their pharmaceutically acceptable salts, as well as other NK-1 antagonists may be administered alone or in combination with pharmaceutically acceptable carriers or diluents by either of the routes

-82-

previously indicated, and such administration may be carried out in single or multiple doses. More particularly, the novel therapeutic agents of this invention can be administered in a wide variety of different dosage forms, i.e., they may be combined with various pharmaceutically acceptable inert carriers in the form of tablets, capsules, lozenges, troches, hard candies, suppositories, aqueous suspensions, injectable solutions, elixirs, syrups, and the like. Such carriers include solid diluents or fillers, sterile aqueous media and various non-toxic organic solvents, etc. Moreover, oral pharmaceutical compositions can be suitably sweetened and/or flavored. In general, the therapeutic compounds of this invention are present in such dosage forms at concentration levels ranging from about 5.0% to about 70% by weight.

For oral administration, tablets containing various excipients such as microcrystalline cellulose, sodium citrate, calcium carbonate, dicalcium phosphate and glycine may be employed along with various disintegrants such as starch (and preferably corn, potato or tapioca starch), alginic acid and certain complex silicates, together with granulation binders like polyvinylpyrrolidone, sucrose, gelatin and acacia. Additionally, lubricating agents such as magnesium stearate, sodium lauryl sulfate and talc are often very useful for tableting purposes. Solid compositions of a similar type may also be employed as fillers in gelatin capsules; preferred materials in this connection also include lactose or milk sugar as well as high molecular weight polyethylene glycols. When aqueous suspensions and/or elixirs are desired for oral administration, the active ingredient may be combined with various sweetening or flavoring agents, coloring matter or dyes, and, if so desired, emulsifying and/or suspending agents as well, together with such diluents as water, ethanol, propylene glycol, glycerin and various like combinations thereof.

-83-

For parenteral administration, solutions of a therapeutic agent in either sesame or peanut oil or in aqueous propylene glycol may be employed. The aqueous solutions should be suitably buffered if necessary and the liquid diluent first rendered isotonic. These aqueous solutions are suitable for intravenous injection purposes. The oily solutions are suitable for intraarticular, intramuscular and subcutaneous injection purposes. The preparation of all these solutions under sterile conditions is readily accomplished by standard pharmaceutical techniques well known to those skilled in the art.

The activity of the therapeutic agents as substance P receptor antagonists may be determined by their ability to inhibit the binding of substance P at its receptor sites in bovine caudate tissue, employing radioactive ligands to visualize the tachykinin receptors by means of autoradiography. The substance P antagonizing activity of the herein described compounds may be evaluated by using the standard assay procedure described by M. A. Cascieri et al., as reported in the Journal of Biological Chemistry, Vol. 258, p. 5158 (1983). This method essentially involves determining the concentration of the individual compound required to reduce by 50% the amount of radiolabelled substance P ligands at their receptor sites in said isolated cow tissues, thereby affording characteristic IC_{50} values for each compound tested.

In this procedure, bovine caudate tissue is removed from a -70°C freezer and homogenized in 50 volumes (w./v.) of an ice-cold 50 mM Tris (i.e., trimethamine which is 2-amino-2-hydroxymethyl-1,3-propanediol) hydrochloride buffer having a pH of 7.7. The homogenate is centrifuged at $30,000 \times G$ for a period of 20 minutes. The pellet is resuspended in 50 volumes of Tris buffer, rehomogenized and then recentrifuged at $30,000 \times G$ for another twenty-minute period. The pellet is then resuspended in 40 volumes of ice-cold 50 mM Tris buffer (pH 7.7) containing 2 mM f

-84-

calcium chloride, 2 mM of magnesium chloride, 4 μ g/ml of bacitracin, 4 μ g/ml of leupeptin, 2 μ g of chymostatin and 200 g/ml of bovine serum albumin. This step completes the production of the tissue preparation.

- 5 The radioligand binding procedure is then carried out in the following manner, viz., by initiating the reaction via the addition of 100 μ l of the test compound made up to a concentration of 1 μ M, followed by the addition of
- 10 100 μ l of radioactive ligand made up to a final concentration 0.5 mM and then finally by the addition of 800 μ l of the tissue preparation produced as described above. The final volume is thus 1.0 ml, and the reaction mixture is next vortexed and incubated at room temperature (ca. 20°C) for a period of 20 minutes. The tubes are then filtered
- 15 using a cell harvester, and the glass fiber filters (Whatman GF/B) are washed four times with 50 mM of Tris buffer (pH 7.7), with the filters having previously been presoaked for a period of two hours prior to the filtering procedure. Radioactivity is then determined in a Beta counter at 53%
- 20 counting efficiency, and the IC_{50} values are calculated by using standard statistical methods.

-85-

5

CLAIMS

1. A method of treating or preventing a disorder of the eye selected from glaucoma, ocular hypertension, miosis, excess lacrimation and breakdown of the blood aqueous barrier in a mammal, comprising administering to said mammal

10 (a) an amount of a compound of the formula

15

20

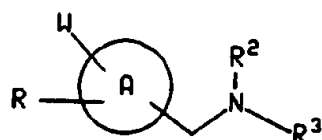
25

30

35

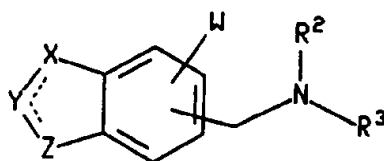
40

-86-



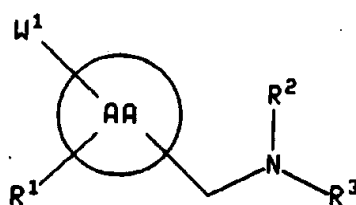
Ia

5



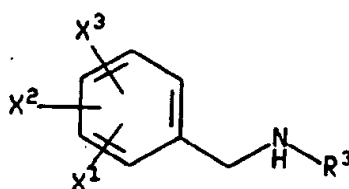
Ib

10



Ic

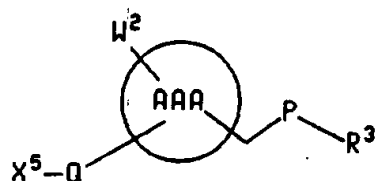
15



Id

20

25



Ie

30

wherein A is a ring system selected from phenyl, naphthyl,
 35 thienyl, quinolinyl and indolinyl, and wherein the sidechain
 containing NR^2R^3 is attached to a carbon atom of ring system
 A;

-87-

AA is an aryl group selected from phenyl, naphthyl, thienyl, dihydroquinoliny and indoliny, and wherein the sidechain containing NR^2R^3 is attached to a carbon atom of AA;

- 5 AAA is an aryl group selected from phenyl, naphthyl, thienyl, dihydroquinoliny and indoliny, and wherein the $-\text{CH}_2\text{PR}^3$ sidechain is attached to a carbon atom of ring AAA;
P is NR^2 , O, S, SO or SO_2 ;

- 10 Q is SO_2 , NH , $-\text{N}(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}$ or $(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}-\text{N}-\text{SO}_2-$

- wherein the point of attachment of said $(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}-\text{N}-\text{SO}_2-$ to ring AAA is the nitrogen atom and the point of attachment to
15 X^1 is the sulfur atom;

W^1 is hydrogen, halo or (C_1-C_6) alkyl, $\text{S}-(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_3)\text{alkyl}$, halo or (C_1-C_6) alkoxy optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms;

- 20 W^2 is hydrogen, $(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}$, $\text{S}-(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_3)\text{alkyl}$, halo or $(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkoxy}$ optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms;

- W is hydrogen, $(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}$ optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms, $-\text{S}(\text{O})_v-(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}$ wherein v is zero, one or two, halo or $(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkoxy}$ optionally
25 substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms;

X^1 is hydrogen, $(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_{10})\text{alkoxy}$ optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms or $(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_{10})\text{alkyl}$ optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms;

- 30 X^2 and X^3 are independently selected from hydrogen, halo, nitro, $(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_{10})\text{alkyl}$ optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms, $(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_{10})\text{alkoxy}$ optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms, trifluoromethyl, hydroxy, phenyl, cyano, amino, $(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)-$

- 35 alkylamino, di- $(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkylamino}$, $-\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}\text{C}-\text{NH}-(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}$, $(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)-$

-88-

alkyl-C(=O)-NH-(C₁-C₆) alkyl, hydroxy(C₁-C₄) alkyl, (C₁-C₄) alkoxy(C₁-

5 C₄) alkyl, -NHCH(=O) and -NHC(=O)-(C₁-C₆) alkyl;

X⁵ is a four to six membered heterocyclic ring containing from one to three heteroatoms selected from sulfur, nitrogen and oxygen (e.g., thiazolyl, pyrrolyl, thienyl, triazolyl, oxazolyl, oxadiazolyl, thiadiazolyl or imidazolyl), wherein said heterocyclic ring may optionally be substituted with from one to three substituents, preferably with from zero to two substituents, independently selected from phenyl, (C₁-C₆) alkyl optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms, (C₁-C₆) alkoxy optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms and halo;

R is a 4, 5 or 6 membered heterocyclic ring containing from one to three heteroatoms selected from oxygen, nitrogen and sulfur (e.g., thiazolyl, azetidyl, pyrrolyl, pyrazolyl, 1,2,3-triazolyl, 1,2,4-triazolyl, isothiazolyl, imidazolyl, isoxazolyl, or oxazolyl) wherein said heterocyclic ring may contain from zero to three double bonds and may optionally be substituted with one or more substituents, preferably one or two substituents, independently selected from (C₁-C₆) alkyl optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms and (C₁-C₆) alkoxy optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms;

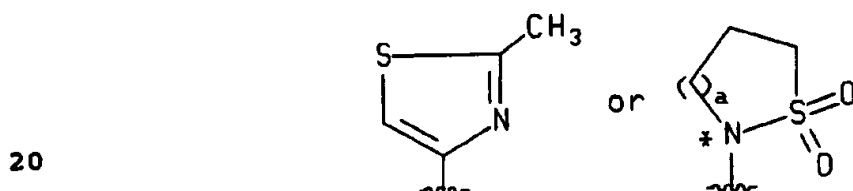
R¹ is selected from amino, (C₁-C₆) alkylamino, di-(C₁-C₆) alkylamino, -S(O)_v-(C₁-C₁₀)-alkyl wherein v is zero, one or two, -S(O)_v-aryl wherein v is zero, one or two, -O-aryl, -SO₂NR⁴R⁵ wherein each of R⁴ and R⁵ is, independently, (C₁-C₆) alkyl, or R⁴ and R⁵, together with the nitrogen to which they are attached, form a saturated ring containing one nitrogen and from 3 to 6

-89-

carbons, $\text{-NHC(C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{)alkyl}$, -NHCCF_3 , $(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_{10})\text{alkyl-N-SO}_2\text{-(C}_1\text{-C}_{10})\text{alkyl}$ wherein one or both of the alkyl moieties may
 5 optionally be substituted with from one to three fluorine

atoms, $\text{-N(SO}_2\text{-(C}_1\text{-C}_{10})\text{alkyl)}_2$ and $(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_{10})\text{alkyl-N-SO}_2\text{-aryl}$; and
 10 wherein the aryl moieties of said $\text{-S(O)}_v\text{-aryl}$, -O-aryl and

$(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_{10})\text{alkyl-N-SO}_2\text{-aryl}$ are independently selected from
 phenyl and benzyl and may optionally be substituted with
 from one to three substituents independently selected from
 15 $(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4)\text{alkyl}$, $(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4)\text{alkoxy}$ and halo;
 or R^1 is a group having the formula



wherein a is 0, 1 or 2 and the asterisk represents a
 position meta to the $\text{R}^2\text{R}^3\text{NCH}_2$ side chain;

the dotted lines in formula Ib represent that one of
 25 the X-Y and Y-Z bonds may optionally be a double bond;

X is selected from $=\text{CH-}$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{-}$, $-\text{O-}$, $-\text{S-}$, $-\text{SO-}$, $-\text{SO}_2\text{-}$,
 $-\text{N(R}^4\text{)-}$, $-\text{NH-}$, $=\text{N-}$, $-\text{CH}[(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{alkyl}]\text{-}$, $=\text{C}[(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{alkyl}]\text{-}$,
 $-\text{CH(C}_6\text{H}_5)\text{-}$ and $=\text{C(C}_6\text{H}_5)\text{-}$;

Y is selected from C=O , C=NR^4 , C=S , $=\text{CH-}$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{-}$, $=\text{C}[(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{alkyl}]\text{-}$, $-\text{CH}[(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{alkyl}]\text{-}$, $=\text{C(C}_6\text{H}_5)\text{-}$, $-\text{CH(C}_6\text{H}_5)\text{-}$, $=\text{N-}$,
 30 $-\text{NH-}$, $-\text{N(R}^4)\text{-}$, $=\text{C(halo)-}$, $=\text{C(OR}^4)\text{-}$, $=\text{C(SR}^4)\text{-}$, $=\text{C(NR}^4)\text{-}$, $-\text{O-}$,
 $-\text{S-}$ and SO_2 , wherein the phenyl moieties of said $=\text{C(C}_6\text{H}_5)\text{-}$ and
 $-\text{CH(C}_6\text{H}_5)\text{-}$ may optionally be substituted with from one to
 three substituents independently selected from
 35 trifluoromethyl and halo, and wherein the alkyl moieties of
 said $=[(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{alkyl}]\text{-}$ and $-\text{CH}[(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{alkyl}]\text{-}$ may optionally be
 substituted with from on to three fluorine atoms;

Z is selected from $=\text{CH-}$, $-\text{CH}_2\text{-}$, $=\text{N-}$, $-\text{NH-}$, $-\text{S-}$,

-90-

$-N(R^4)-$, $=C(C_6H_5)-$, $-CH(C_6H_5)-$, $=C[(C_1-C_6) \text{ alkyl}] -$ and $-CH[(C_1-C_6) \text{ alkyl}] -$;

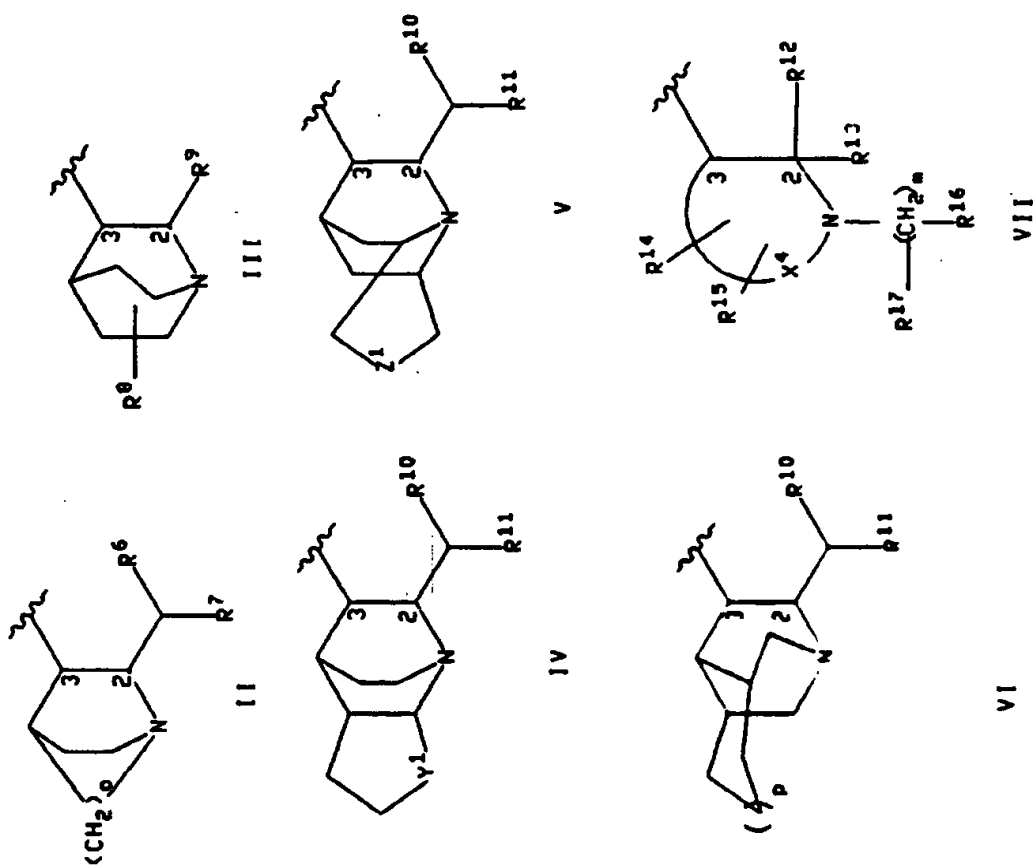
or X, Y and Z, together with the two carbon atoms shared between the benzo ring and the XYZ ring, form a fused
5 pyridine or pyrimidine ring;

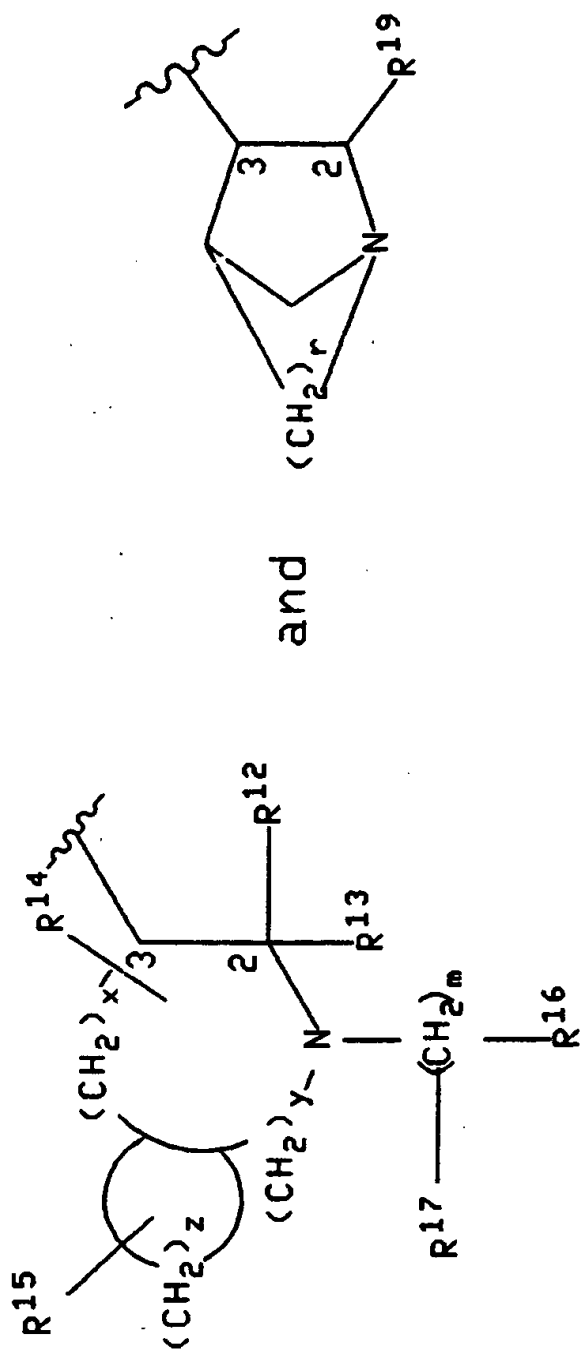
R^4 is (C_1-C_6) alkyl or phenyl;

R^2 is hydrogen or $-CO_2(C_1-C_{10}) \text{ alkyl}$;

R^3 is selected from

-91-







viii

-93-

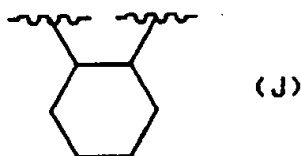
wherein R^6 and R^{10} are independently selected from furyl, thienyl, pyridyl, indolyl, biphenyl and phenyl, wherein said phenyl may optionally be substituted with one or two substituents independently selected from halo, (C_1-C_{10}) alkyl optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms, (C_1-C_{10}) alkoxy optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms, carboxy, benzyloxycarbonyl and (C_1-C_3) alkoxy-carbonyl;

R^7 is selected from (C_3-C_4) branched alkyl, (C_5-C_6) branched alkenyl, (C_5-C_7) cycloalkyl, and the radicals named in the definition of R^6 ;

R^8 is hydrogen or (C_1-C_6) alkyl;

R^9 and R^{19} are independently selected from phenyl, biphenyl, naphthyl, pyridyl, benzhydryl, thienyl and furyl, and R^9 and R^{19} may optionally be substituted with from one to three substituents independently selected from halo, (C_1-C_{10}) alkyl optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms and (C_1-C_{10}) alkoxy optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms;

Y^1 is $(CH_2)_1$, wherein 1 is an integer from one to three, or Y^1 is a group of the formula



25

Z^1 is oxygen, sulfur, amino, (C_1-C_3) alkylamino or $(CH_2)_n$, wherein n is zero, one or two;

x is an integer from zero to four;

y is an integer from zero to four;

z is an integer from one to six, wherein the ring containing $(CH_2)_z$ may contain from zero to three double bonds, and one of the carbons of $(CH_2)_z$ may optionally be replaced by oxygen, sulfur or nitrogen;

o is two or three;

p is zero or one;

-94-

r is ne, two or three;

R¹¹ is thienyl, biphenyl or phenyl optionally substituted with one or two substituents independently selected from halo, (C₁-C₁₀) alkyl optionally substituted with
5 from one to three fluorine atoms and (C₁-C₁₀) alkoxy optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms;

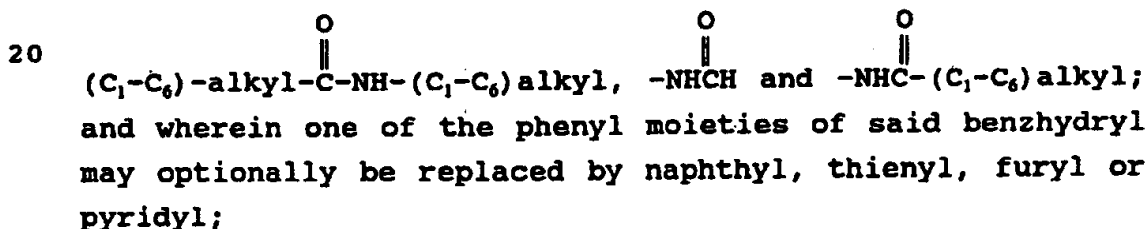
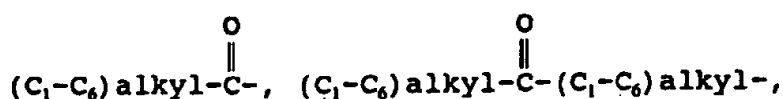
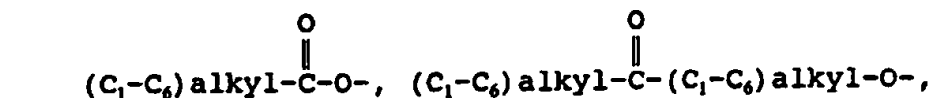
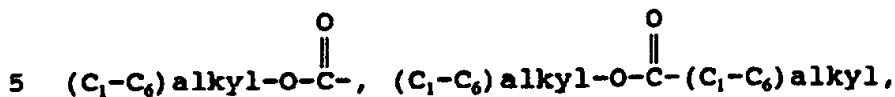
X⁴ is (CH₂)_q, wherein q is an integer from 1 to 6, and wherein any one of the carbon-carbon single bonds in said
10 (CH₂)_q may optionally be replaced by a carbon-carbon double bond, and wherein any one of the carbon atoms of said (CH₂)_q may optionally be substituted with R¹⁴, and wherein any one of the carbon atoms of said (CH₂)_q may optionally be substituted with R¹⁵;

15 m is an integer from 0 to 8, and any one of the carbon-carbon single bonds of (CH₂)_m, wherein both carbon atoms of such bond are bonded to each other and to another carbon atom in the (CH₂)_m chain, may optionally be replaced by a carbon-carbon double bond or a carbon-carbon triple
20 bond, and any one of the carbon atoms of said (CH₂)_m may optionally be substituted with R¹⁷;

R¹² is a radical selected from hydrogen, (C₁-C₆) straight or branched alkyl, (C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl wherein one of the carbon atoms may optionally be replaced by nitrogen, oxygen
25 or sulfur; aryl selected from biphenyl, phenyl, indanyl and naphthyl; heteroaryl selected from thienyl, furyl, pyridyl, thiazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxazolyl, isoxazolyl, triazolyl, tetrazolyl and quinolyl; phenyl-(C₂-C₆)alkyl, benzhydryl and benzyl, wherein the point of attachment on R¹² is a carbon
30 atom unless R¹² is hydrogen, and wherein each of said aryl and heteroaryl groups and the phenyl moieties of said benzyl, phenyl-(C₂-C₆)alkyl and benzhydryl may optionally be substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from halo, nitro, (C₁-C₁₀)alkyl optionally
35 substituted with from ne to three fluorine atoms, (C₁-C₁₀)alkoxy optionally substituted with

-95-

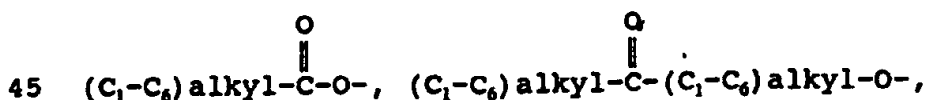
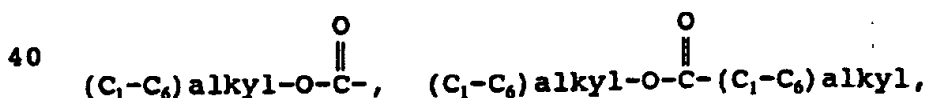
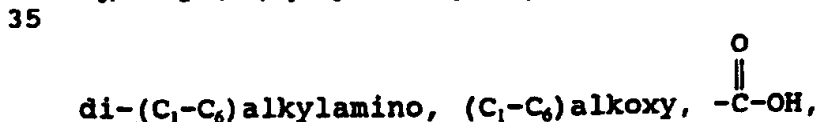
from one to three fluorine atoms, amino, hydroxy-(C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₁-C₆)alkoxy-(C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₁-C₆)-alkylamino,



25 R¹³ is hydrogen, phenyl or (C₁-C₆)alkyl;

or R¹² and R¹³, together with the carbon to which they
are attached, form a saturated carbocyclic ring having from
3 to 7 carbon atoms wherein one of said carbon atoms that is
neither the point of attachment of the spiro ring nor
30 adjacent to it may optionally be replaced by oxygen,
nitrogen or sulfur;

R¹⁴ and R¹⁵ are each independently selected from
hydrogen, hydroxy, halo, amino, oxo (=O), cyano, hydroxy-(C₁-
C₆)alkyl, (C₁-C₆)alkoxy-(C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₁-C₆)alkylamino,



-96-

(C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-, (C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-, and the radicals
 5 set forth in the definition of R¹²;

R¹⁶ is NHCR¹⁸, NHCH₂R¹⁸, SO₂R¹⁸, GR²⁰ CO₂H or one of the
 10 radicals set forth in any of the definitions of R¹², R¹⁴ and R¹⁵;

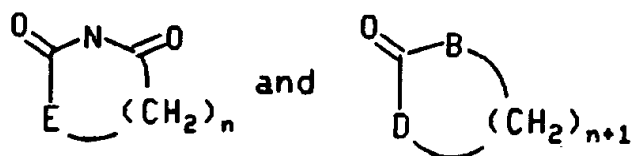
R¹⁷ is oximino (=NOH) or one of the radicals set forth
 in any of the definitions of R¹², R¹⁴ and R¹⁵; and

R¹⁸ is (C₁-C₆)alkyl, hydrogen, phenyl or phenyl (C₁-
 15 C₆)alkyl;

G is selected from the group consisting of CH₂,
 nitrogen, oxygen, sulfur and carbonyl;

R²⁰ is a monocyclic or bicyclic heterocycle selected
 from the group consisting of pyrimidinyl, benzoxazolyl,
 20 2,3-dihydro-3-oxobenzisulfonazol-2-yl, morpholin-1-yl,
 thiomorpholin-1-yl, benzofuranyl, benzothienyl, indolyl,
 isoindolyl, isoquinolinyl, furyl, pyridyl, isothiazolyl,
 oxazolyl, triazolyl, tetrazolyl, quinolyl, thiazolyl,
 thienyl, and groups of the formulae

25



30

wherein B and D are selected from carbon, oxygen, and
 nitrogen, and at least one of B and D is other than carbon;
 E is carbon or nitrogen; n is an integer from 1 to 5; and
 any one of the carbons of the (CH₂)_n or (CH₂)_{n+1} may be
 35 optionally substituted with (C₁-C₆)alkyl or (C₂-C₆)
 spiroalkyl, and either any two of the carbon atoms of said
 (CH₂)_n and (CH₂)_{n+1} may be bridged by a one or two carbon atom
 linkage, or any one pair of adjacent carbons of said (CH₂)_n
 and (CH₂)_{n+1} may form, together with from one to three carbon

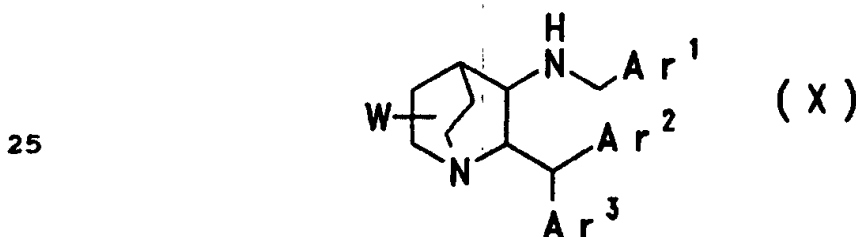
-97-

atoms that are not members of the carbonyl containing ring,
a (C₃-C₅) fused carbocyclic ring;

with the proviso that (a) when m is 0, one of R¹⁶ and R¹⁷
is absent and the other is hydrogen, (b) when R³ is a group
5 of the formula VIII, R¹⁴ and R¹⁵ cannot be attached to the
same carbon atom, (c) when R¹⁴ and R¹⁵ are attached to the
same carbon atom, then either each of R¹⁴ and R¹⁵ is
independently selected from hydrogen, fluoro, (C₁-C₆)alkyl,
hydroxy-(C₁-C₆)alkyl and (C₁-C₆)alkoxy-(C₁-C₆)alkyl, or R¹⁴ and
10 R¹⁵, together with the carbon to which they are attached,
form a (C₃-C₆) saturated carbocyclic ring that forms a spiro
compound with the nitrogen-containing ring to which they are
attached; (d) R¹² and R¹³ cannot both be hydrogen; (e) when R¹⁴
or R¹⁵ is attached to a carbon atom of X⁴ or (CH₂), that is
15 adjacent to the ring nitrogen, then R¹⁴ or R¹⁵, respectively,
must be a substituent wherein the point of attachment is a
carbon atom; and (f) neither R¹⁴, R¹⁵, R¹⁶ nor R¹⁷ can form a
ring with R¹³;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, that is
20 effective in treating or preventing such disorder; or

(b) an amount of a compound having the formula



wherein W is Y or X(CH₂)_n;

Y is optionally substituted (C₁-C₆)alkyl, optionally
30 substituted (C₂-C₆)alkenyl or optionally substituted (C₃-
C₆)cycloalkyl;

X is optionally substituted (C₁-C₆)alkoxy, hydroxy,
CONR¹R², CO₂R¹, CHR¹OR², CHR¹NR²R³, COR¹, CONR¹OR² or optionally
substituted aryl, wherein said aryl is selected from phenyl,
35 naphthyl, pyridyl, quinyl, thienyl, furyl, phenoxyphenyl,

-98-

oxazolyl, tetrazolyl, thiazolyl, imidazolyl and pyrazolyl; and n is an integer from zero to six;

Ar¹, Ar² and Ar³ are each, independently, optionally substituted aryl, wherein said aryl is selected from phenyl, naphthyl, pyridyl, quinolyl, thienyl, furyl, phenoxyphenyl, oxazolyl, tetrazolyl, thiazolyl, imidazolyl and pyrazolyl;

and R¹, R² and R³ are independently selected from hydrogen, optionally substituted (C₁-C₆)alkyl, optionally substituted (C₁-C₆)alkoxy, optionally substituted (C₃-C₆)cycloalkyl, optionally substituted aryl, wherein said aryl is selected from phenyl, naphthyl, pyridyl, quinolyl, thienyl, furyl, phenoxyphenyl, oxazolyl, tetrazolyl, thiazolyl, imidazolyl and pyrazolyl; and optionally substituted (C₁-C₆)heterocyclic groups, wherein said heterocyclic groups are selected from pyrrolidino, piperidino, morpholino, piperazinyl and thiamorpholino;

and wherein the substituents on the foregoing substituted alkyl, alkenyl, cycloalkyl and alkoxy groups are independently selected from halo, nitro, amino, (C₁-C₄)alkyl, (C₁-C₄)alkoxy, trifluoromethyl and trifluoromethoxy;

and wherein the substituents on the foregoing substituted (C₁-C₆) heterocyclic groups are attached to a sulfur or nitrogen atom on the ring and are independently selected from oxygen, di-oxygen and (C₁-C₄)alkyl when attached to a ring sulfur atom, and are independently selected from oxygen and (C₁-C₄)alkyl when attached to a ring nitrogen atom;

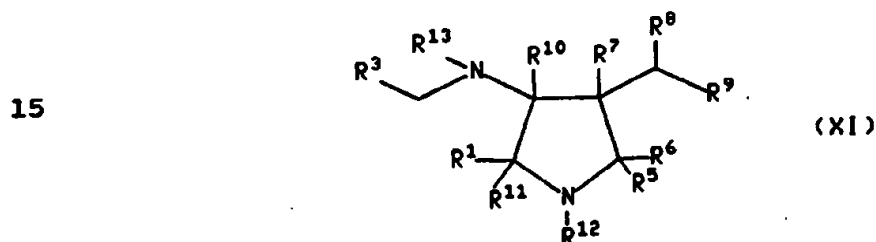
and wherein the substituents on said substituted Ar¹ groups are independently selected from (C₁-C₆)alkyl optionally substituted with from one to three halo groups, (C₁-C₆)alkoxy optionally substituted with from one to three halo groups, (C₁-C₆)alkylsulfinyl, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₁-C₆)alkylthio, (C₁-C₆)alkylsulfonyl, (C₁-C₆)alkylsulfonylamino, and di-(C₁-C₆)alkylamino wherein one or both of the alkyl groups may be optionally substituted with a (C₁-C₆)alkylsulfonyl, or (C₁-C₆)alkylsulfinyl group;

-99-

and wherein the substituents on said substituted Ar² and Ar³ groups are independently selected from (C₁-C₄)alkyl, (C₁-C₄)alkoxy, (C₁-C₄)alkylthio, (C₁-C₄)alkylsulfinyl, di-(C₁-C₄)alkylamino, trifluoromethyl and trifluoromethoxy; with the
 5 proviso that when Y is unsubstituted or is substituted with (C₁-C₄)alkyl, it is attached to the 4- or 6-position of the quinuclidine ring;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, that is effective in treating or preventing such disorder; or

10 (c) A method of treating or preventing emesis in a mammal, comprising administering to said mammal an amount of a compound having the formula



wherein R¹ is selected from hydrogen, (C₁-C₆) straight or
 20 branched alkyl, (C₃-C₇) cycloalkyl wherein one of the carbon atoms may optionally be replaced by nitrogen, oxygen or sulfur; aryl selected from phenyl, biphenyl, indanyl and naphthyl; heteroaryl selected from thienyl, furyl, pyridyl, thiazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxazolyl, isoxazolyl, triazolyl,
 25 tetrazolyl and quinolyl; phenyl (C₂-C₆) alkyl, benzhydryl and benzyl, wherein each of said aryl and heteroaryl groups and the phenyl moieties of said benzyl, phenyl (C₂-C₆) alkyl and benzhydryl may optionally be substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from halo, nitro, (C₁-C₆)
 30 alkyl optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine

-100-

atoms, (C₁-C₆) alkoxy, amino, trihaloalkoxy (e.g., trifluoromethoxy),

5 (C₁-C₆)alkylamino, (C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-C(=O)-, (C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-C(=O)-

10 (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-O-, (C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-,

(C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-, (C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-, (C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-,

15 (C₁-C₆)alkyl-, di-(C₁-C₆)alkylamino, -C(=O)NH-(C₁-C₆)alkyl,

20 (C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)NH-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-, -NHCH(=O) and -NHC(=O)-(C₁-C₆)alkyl;
and wherein one of the phenyl moieties of said benzhydryl
may optionally be replaced by naphthyl, thienyl, furyl or
pyridyl;

25 R³ is aryl selected from phenyl and naphthyl; heteroaryl
selected from indanyl, thienyl, furyl, pyridyl, thiazolyl,
isothiazolyl, oxazolyl, isoxazolyl, triazolyl, tetrazolyl
and quinolyl; and cycloalkyl having 3 to 7 carbon atoms
wherein one of said carbon atoms may optionally be replaced
30 by nitrogen, oxygen or sulfur; wherein each of said aryl and
heteroaryl groups may optionally be substituted with one or
more substituents, and said (C₃-C₇) cycloalkyl may optionally
be substituted with one or two substituents, each of said
substituents being independently selected from halo, nitro,
35 (C₁-C₆)alkyl optionally substituted with from one to three
fluorine atoms, (C₁-C₆)alkoxy substituted with from one to
three fluorine atoms, amino, phenyl, trihaloalkoxy,

40 (C₁-C₆)alkylamino, -C(=O)NH-(C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-

45 -C(=O)O-(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -CH(=O), -CH₂OR¹³, NH(C₁-C₆)alkyl-,

-101-

$\text{-NH}\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}\text{CH-}$, $\text{-NR}^{24}\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}\text{C-(C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{)alkyl}$ and $\text{-NHC}\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}\text{-(C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{)alkyl}$;

one of R^5 and R^6 is hydrogen and the other is selected
 5 from hydroxymethyl, hydrogen, $(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_3)\text{alkyl}$, $(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{acyloxy-}$
 $(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_3)\text{alkyl}$, $(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{alkoxymethyl}$ and benzyloxymethyl;

R^7 and R^8 are independently selected from hydrogen, $(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_3)\text{alkyl}$ and phenyl;

R^9 is selected from methyl, hydroxymethyl,

10 $\text{HC}\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}\text{-}$, $\text{R}^{14}\text{R}^{15}\text{NCO}_2\text{CH}_2\text{-}$, $\text{R}^{16}\text{OCO}_2\text{CH}_2\text{-}$, $(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4)\text{alkyl-CO}_2\text{CH}_2\text{-}$, $\text{-CONR}^{17}\text{R}^{18}$,
 $\text{R}^{17}\text{R}^{18}\text{NCO}_2\text{-}$, $\text{R}^{19}\text{OCO}_2\text{-}$, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{CO}_2\text{CH}_2\text{-}$, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CO}_2\text{CH}_2\text{-}$, $(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_4)\text{alkyl-}$
 CH(OH)- , $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH(OH)-}$, $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{CH(OH)-}$, CH_2halo , $\text{R}^{20}\text{SO}_2\text{OCH}_2\text{-}$, $\text{-CO}_2\text{R}^{16}$
 15 and $\text{R}^{21}\text{CO}_2\text{-}$;

R^{10} and R^{11} are independently selected from hydrogen, $(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_3)\text{alkyl}$ and phenyl;

R^{12} is hydrogen, benzyl or a group of the formula



wherein m is an integer from zero to twelve, and any one of
 the carbon-carbon single bonds of $(\text{CH}_2)_m$, wherein both carbon
 atoms of such bond are bonded to each other and to another
 25 carbon atom of the $(\text{CH}_2)_m$ chain, may optionally be replaced
 by a carbon-carbon double or triple bond, and any one of the
 carbon atoms of $(\text{CH}_2)_m$ may optionally be substituted with R^{23} ;

R^{13} , R^{14} , R^{15} , R^{16} , R^{17} , R^{18} , R^{19} , R^{20} , R^{21} and R^{24} are
 independently selected from hydrogen, $(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{alkyl}$ and
 30 phenyl;

R^{22} and R^{23} are independently selected from hydrogen,
 hydroxy, halo, amino, carboxy, carboxy $(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{alkyl}$, $(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{alkylamino}$,
 di $(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{alkylamino}$, $(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{alkoxy}$, $(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{-}$

35 $\text{alkyl-O-C}\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}\text{-}$, $(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{alkyl-O-C}\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}\text{-(C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{)alkyl}$, $(\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{alkyl-C}\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}\text{-}$,

-102-

$(C_1-C_6)alkyl-\overset{O}{\parallel}C-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-O-$, $(C_1-C_6)alkyl-\overset{O}{\parallel}C-$, $(C_1-C_6)-$
 $alkyl-\overset{O}{\parallel}C-(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, (C_1-C_6) straight or branched alkyl, (C_3-C_7) cycloalkyl wherein one of the carbon atoms may optionally
 be replaced by nitrogen, oxygen or sulfur; aryl selected
 from phenyl and naphthyl; heteroaryl selected from indanyl,
 thienyl, furyl, pyridyl, thiazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxazolyl,
 isoxazolyl, triazolyl, tetrazolyl and quinolyl; phenyl- $(C_2-C_6)alkyl$, benzhydryl and benzyl, wherein each of said aryl
 and heteroaryl groups and the phenyl moieties of said
 benzyl, phenyl- $(C_2-C_6)alkyl$ and benzhydryl may optionally be
 substituted with one or two substituents independently
 selected from halo, nitro, $(C_1-C_6)alkyl$ optionally
 substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms, $(C_1-C_6)alkoxy$ optionally substituted with from one to three
 fluorine atoms,
 trifluoromethyl, amino, $(C_1-C_6)-alkylamino$, $(C_1-C_6)alkyl-O-\overset{O}{\parallel}C$,
 $(C_1-C_6)alkyl-O-\overset{O}{\parallel}C-(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, $(C_1-C_6)alkyl-\overset{O}{\parallel}C-O-$, $(C_1-C_6)alkyl-$
 $\overset{O}{\parallel}C-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-O-$, $(C_1-C_6)alkyl-\overset{O}{\parallel}C-$, $(C_1-C_6)alkyl-\overset{O}{\parallel}C-(C_1-$
 $C_6)alkyl-$, di- $(C_1-C_6)alkylamino$, $-\overset{O}{\parallel}CNH-(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, $(C_1-C_6)-$
 $alkyl-\overset{O}{\parallel}C-NH-(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, $-\overset{O}{\parallel}NHCH$ and $-\overset{O}{\parallel}NHC-(C_1-C_6)alkyl$; and
 wherein one of the phenyl moieties of said benzhydryl may
 optionally be replaced by naphthyl, thienyl, furyl or
 pyridyl;

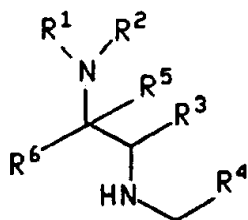
or R^9 , together with the carbon to which it is attached,
 the nitrogen of the pyrrolidine ring, the carbon to which R^7
 is attached and the carbon to which R^5 and R^6 are attached
 form a second pyrrolidine ring; with the proviso that when
 R^9 , together with the carbon to which it is attached, the

-103-

nitrogen of the pyrrolidine ring, the carbon to which R⁷ is attached and the carbon to which R⁵ and R⁶ are attached, form a second pyrrolidine ring (thus forming a bicyclic structure containing a bridgehead nitrogen), either R¹² is absent or R¹² is present and the nitrogen of the second pyrrolidine ring is positively charged;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, that is effective in treating or preventing such disorder; or

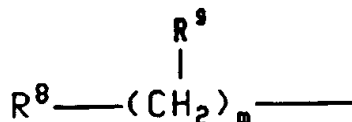
(d) an amount of a compound of the formula



XII

wherein R¹ is hydrogen, (C₁-C₆) alkyl, a saturated (C₆-C₁₀) carbocyclic ring system containing two fused rings, a saturated (C₆-C₁₀) carbocyclic bridged ring system containing two rings, or benzyl wherein the phenyl moiety of said benzyl may optionally be substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from halo, (C₁-C₆) alkyl optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms and (C₁-C₈) alkoxy optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms;

R² is hydrogen, benzyl or a group of the formula



wherein m is an integer from zero to twelve, and any one of the carbon-carbon single bonds of (CH₂)_m, wherein both carbon atoms of such bond are bonded to each other and to another carbon atom of the (CH₂)_m chain, may optionally be replaced by a carbon-carbon double or triple bond, and any one of the carbon atoms of (CH₂)_m may optionally be substituted with R⁹;

-104-

R⁸ and R⁹ are independently selected from hydrogen, hydroxy, halo, amino, carboxy, carboxy(C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₁-C₆)alkylamino, di-(C₁-C₆)alkylamino, (C₁-C₆)alkoxy,

5 (C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-C(=O)-, (C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-C(=O)-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-,
 10 (C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-O-, (C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-,
 (C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-, (C₁-C₆) straight or branched alkyl, (C₃-C₇) cycloalkyl wherein one of the carbon atoms may optionally be
 15 replaced by nitrogen, oxygen or sulfur; aryl selected from phenyl and naphthyl; heteroaryl selected from indanyl, thienyl, furyl, pyridyl, thiazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxazolyl, isoxazolyl, triazolyl, tetrazolyl and quinolyl; phenyl-(C₂-C₆)alkyl, benzhydryl and benzyl, wherein each of said aryl
 20 and heteroaryl groups and the phenyl moieties of said benzyl, phenyl-(C₂-C₆)alkyl and benzhydryl may optionally be substituted with one or two substituents independently selected from halo, nitro, (C₁-C₆)alkyl optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms, (C₁-
 25 C₆)alkoxy optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms,

30 trifluoromethyl, amino, (C₁-C₆)-alkylamino, (C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-C(=O)-,
 (C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-C(=O)-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-, (C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-O-,
 35 (C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-, (C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-,
 40 (C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-, di-(C₁-C₆)alkylamino,

45 -CNH-C(=O)-(C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₁-C₆)-alkyl-C(=O)-NH-(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -NHCH and

-105-

$\begin{array}{c} \text{O} \\ || \\ \text{-NHC-} \end{array}$ (C₁-C₆)alkyl; and wherein one of the phenyl moieties of
 said benzhydryl may optionally be replaced by naphthyl,
 5 thienyl, furyl or pyridyl;

or R¹ and R², together with the nitrogen to which they
 are attached, form a saturated or unsaturated monocyclic
 ring containing from three to eight carbon atoms, a fused
 bicyclic ring containing from six to ten carbon atoms, or a
 10 saturated bridged ring system containing from six to ten
 carbon atoms;

R⁴ is aryl selected from phenyl and naphthyl; heteroaryl
 selected from indanyl, thienyl, furyl, pyridyl, thiazolyl,
 isothiazolyl, oxazolyl, isoxazolyl, triazolyl, tetrazolyl
 15 and quinolyl; and cycloalkyl having from three to seven
 carbon atoms wherein one of said carbon atoms may optionally
 be replaced by nitrogen, oxygen or sulfur; wherein each of
 said aryl and heteroaryl groups may optionally be
 substituted with one or more substituents, and said (C₃-C₇)
 20 cycloalkyl may optionally be substituted with one, two or
 three substituents, each of said substituents being
 independently selected from halo, nitro, (C-C₄) alkyl
 optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine
 atoms, (C₁-C₆) alkoxy optionally substituted with from one to
 25 three fluorine atoms, phenyl,

amino, (C₁-C₆) alkylamino, $\begin{array}{c} \text{O} \\ || \\ \text{-C-NH-} \end{array}$ (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₁-C₆)alkyl- $\begin{array}{c} \text{O} \\ || \\ \text{-C-} \end{array}$,
 30 $\begin{array}{c} \text{O} \\ || \\ \text{-C-O-} \end{array}$ (C₁-C₆)alkyl, $\begin{array}{c} \text{O} \\ || \\ \text{-CH-} \end{array}$, -CH₂OR¹², NH₂(C₁-C₆)alkyl-,

35 $\begin{array}{c} \text{O} \\ || \\ \text{-NHCH-} \end{array}$, $\begin{array}{c} \text{O} \\ || \\ \text{-NHC-} \end{array}$ (C₁-C₆)alkyl, $\begin{array}{c} \text{O} \\ || \\ \text{-NH-S-} \end{array}$ (C₁-C₆)alkyl and

40 (C₁-C₆)alkyl-N- $\begin{array}{c} \text{O} \\ || \\ \text{-S-} \end{array}$ (C₁-C₆)alkyl;

-106-

R^3 is hydrogen, (C_3-C_8) cycloalkyl, (C_1-C_6) straight or branched alkyl or phenyl optionally substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from halo, (C_1-C_6) alkyl optionally substituted with from one to three
 5 fluorine atoms, and (C_1-C_6) alkoxy optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms;

R^5 is hydrogen, (C_1-C_6) alkyl, or phenyl optionally substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from halo, (C_1-C_6) alkyl optionally substituted with
 10 from one to three fluorine atoms and (C_1-C_6) alkoxy optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms;

R^6 is selected from hydrogen, (C_1-C_6) straight or branched alkyl, (C_3-C_7) cycloalkyl wherein one of the carbon atoms may optionally be replaced by nitrogen, oxygen or
 15 sulfur; aryl selected from phenyl, biphenyl, indanyl and naphthyl; heteroaryl selected from thienyl, furyl, pyridyl, thiazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxazolyl, isoxazolyl, triazolyl, tetrazolyl and quinolyl; phenyl (C_2-C_6) alkyl, benzhydryl and benzyl, wherein each of said aryl and heteroaryl groups and
 20 the phenyl moieties of said benzyl, phenyl (C_1-C_6) alkyl and benzhydryl may optionally be substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from halo, nitro, (C_1-C_6) alkyl optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms, (C_1-C_6) alkoxy, trifluoromethyl, amino, trihaloalkoxy
 25

(e.g., trifluoromethoxy), (C_1-C_6) alkylamino, (C_1-C_6) alkyl-O-C(=O)-,

30 (C_1-C_6) alkyl-O-C(=O)-(C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C_1-C_6) alkyl-C(=O)-O-,

35 (C_1-C_6) alkyl-C(=O)-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-, (C_1-C_6) alkyl-C(=O)-,

40 (C_1-C_6) alkyl-C(=O)-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-, di- (C_1-C_6) alkylamino,

-107-

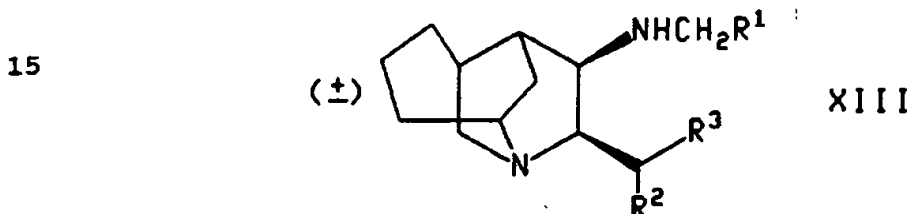
$\text{O}=\text{CNH}-(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}$, $(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}-\text{C}(=\text{O})\text{NH}-(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}$ -, $-\text{NHCH}=\text{O}$ and

5 $-\text{NHC}(=\text{O})-(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}$; and wherein one of the phenyl moieties of said benzhydryl may optionally be replaced by naphthyl, thienyl, furyl or pyridyl; and

10 R^{12} is hydrogen, $(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_3)\text{alkyl}$ or phenyl;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, that is effective in treating or preventing such disorder;

(e) an amount of a compound of the formula



wherein R^1 is cycloalkyl having from five to seven carbon atoms, pyrrolyl, thienyl, pyridyl, phenyl or substituted phenyl, wherein said substituted phenyl is substituted with from one to three substituents independently selected from fluorine, chlorine, bromine, trifluoromethyl, alkyl having from one to three carbon atoms, alkoxy having from one to three carbon atoms, carboxy, alkoxycarbonyl having from one to three carbon atoms in the alkoxy moiety and benzyloxycarbonyl;

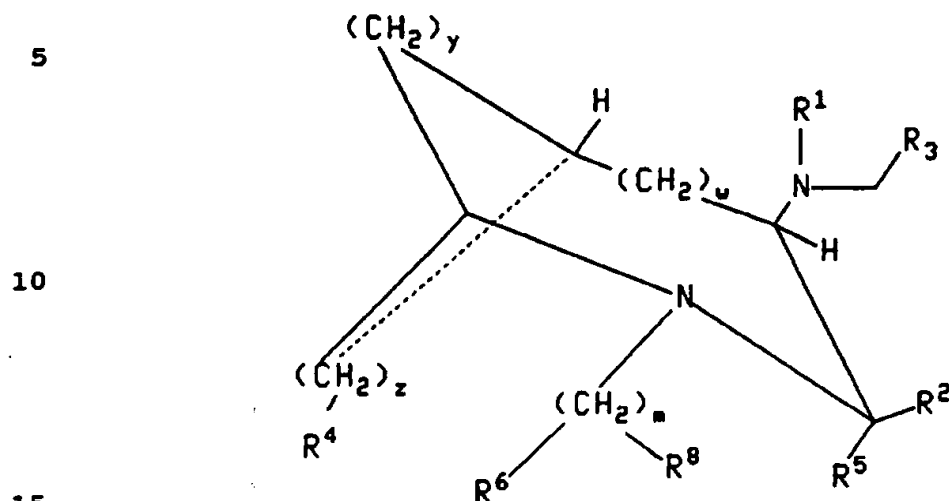
R^2 is furyl, thienyl, pyridyl, indolyl, biphenyl, phenyl or substituted phenyl, wherein said substituted phenyl is substituted with one or two substituents independently selected from fluorine, chlorine, bromine, trifluoromethyl, alkyl having from one to three carbon atoms, alkoxy having from one to three carbon atoms, carboxy, alkoxycarbonyl having from one to three carbon atoms in the alkoxy moiety and benzyloxycarbonyl; and

R^3 is thienyl, phenyl, fluorophenyl, chlorophenyl or bromophenyl;

-108-

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, that is effective in treating or preventing such disorder; or

(f) an amount of a compound of the formula



XIV

wherein m is an integer from 0 to 8, and any one of the carbon-carbon single bonds of $(CH_2)_m$, wherein both carbon atoms of such bond are bonded to each other and to another carbon in the $(CH_2)_m$ chain, may optionally be replaced by a carbon-carbon double bond or a carbon-carbon triple bond, and any one of the carbon atoms of said $(CH_2)_m$ may optionally be substituted with R^8 ;

25 w is an integer from 0 to 2;

y is an integer from 1 to 4;

z is an integer from 1 to 4, and wherein any one of the carbon atoms of said $(CH_2)_z$ may optionally be substituted with R^4 ;

30 R^1 is hydrogen or (C_1-C_8) alkyl optionally substituted with hydroxy, alkoxy or fluoro;

R^2 is a group selected from hydrogen, (C_1-C_6) straight or branched alkyl, (C_3-C_7) cycloalkyl wherein one of the carbon atoms may optionally be replaced by nitrogen, oxygen or sulfur; aryl selected from phenyl, indanyl, and naphthyl;

35 heteroaryl selected from thienyl, furyl, pyridyl, thiazolyl,

-109-

isothiazolyl, oxazolyl, isoxazolyl, triazolyl, tetrazolyl and quinolyl; phenyl(C₂-C₆)alkyl, benzhydryl and benzyl, wherein one of the phenyl moieties of said benzhydryl may optionally be replaced by naphthyl, thienyl, furyl or
 5 pyridyl and wherein each of said aryl and heteroaryl groups and the phenyl moieties of said benzyl, phenyl(C₂-C₆)alkyl and benzhydryl may optionally be substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from halo, nitro, (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₁-C₆)alkoxy, trifluoromethyl, amino,

10 (C₁-C₆)-alkylamino, (C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-C(=O)-, (C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-C(=O)-
 15 (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-O-, (C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-
 (C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-, (C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-, (C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-
 20 (C₁-C₆)alkyl-, di-(C₁-C₆)alkylamino, -C(=O)NH-(C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₁-C₆)-
 alkyl-C(=O)NH-(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -NHCH(=O) and -NHC(=O)-(C₁-C₆) alkyl;

25 R⁵ is hydrogen, phenyl or (C₁-C₆)alkyl;

or R² and R⁵, together with the carbon to which they are attached, form a saturated carbocyclic ring having from 3 to 7 carbon atoms wherein one of said carbon atoms may optionally be replaced by oxygen, nitrogen or sulfur;

30 R³ is aryl selected from phenyl, indanyl, and naphthyl; heteroaryl selected from thienyl, furyl, pyridyl, thiazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxazolyl, isoxazolyl, triazolyl, tetrazolyl and quinolyl; and cycloalkyl having 3 to 7 carbon atoms wherein one of said carbon atoms may optionally be replaced
 35 by nitrogen, oxygen or sulfur; wherein each of said aryl and heteroaryl groups may optionally be substituted with one or more substituents, and said (C₃-C₇) cycloalkyl may optionally be substituted with one or two substituents, each of said substituents being independently selected from halo, nitro,
 40 (C₁-C₆)alkyl optionally substituted with from one to three

-110-

fluorine atoms, (C₁-C₆)alkoxy optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms, trifluoromethyl, phenyl,

5 amino, (C₁-C₆)alkylamino, (C₁-C₆)dialkyl amino, $-\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}{\text{C}}-\text{NH}-(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)$

10 C_6)alkyl, $(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}-\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}{\text{C}}-\text{NH}-(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}$, $-\text{NHCH}-\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}{\text{C}}-\text{NH}-(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}$ and

15 $-\text{NHC}-\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}{\text{C}}-(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}$;

R^4 is independently selected from hydrogen, hydroxy, halo, amino, oxo (=O), nitrile, (C₁-C₆)alkylamino, di-(C₁-C₆)alkylamino, (C₁-C₆)alkoxy,

20 $(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}-\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}{\text{C}}-$, $(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}-\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}{\text{C}}-(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}$,

$(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}-\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}{\text{C}}-\text{O}-$, $(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}-\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}{\text{C}}-(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}-\text{O}-$, hydroxy-(C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₁-C₆)alkoxy(C₁-C₆)alkyl,

25 $(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}-\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}{\text{C}}-$, $(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}-\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}{\text{C}}-(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}-$, and the groups set forth in the definition of R^2 ;

30 R^6 is NHCR^9 , NHCH_2R^9 , NHSO_2R^9 or one of the groups set forth in any of the definitions of R^2 , and R^4 ;

R^8 is oximino (=NOH) or one of the groups set forth in any of the definitions of R^2 , and R^4 ;

35 R^9 is (C₁-C₆)alkyl, hydrogen, phenyl or phenyl (C₁-C₆)alkyl;

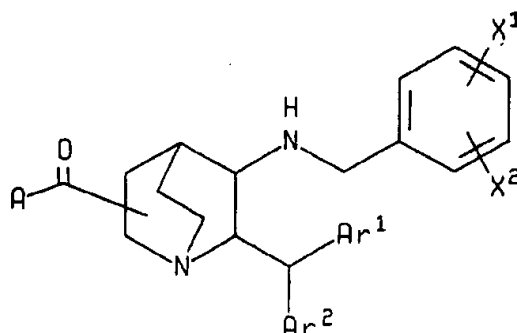
with the proviso that (a) when m is 0, R^8 is absent and R^6 is hydrogen, (b) neither R^4 , R^6 , nor R^8 can form, together with the carbon to which it is attached, a ring with R^5 , and (c) the sum of y and z must be less than 7;

40 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, that is effective in treating or preventing such disorder; or

(g) an amount of a compound of the formula

-111-

5



10

XV

wherein X^1 is (C_1-C_3) alkoxy or halosubstituted (C_1-C_3) alkoxy;

X^2 is hydrogen, halogen, (C_1-C_3) alkyl, (C_2-C_3) alkenyl, (C_2-C_3) alkynyl, (C_1-C_3) alkoxy, (C_1-C_3) alkylthio, (C_1-C_3) alkylsulfinyl, (C_1-C_3) alkylsulfonyl, halosubstituted (C_1-C_3) alkyl, halosubstituted (C_1-C_3) alkoxy, (C_1-C_3) alkylamino, dialkylamino having from 1 to 5 carbon atoms in each alkyl moiety, (C_1-C_3) alkylsulfonylamino (which may be substituted

by halogen), (C_1-C_3) alkyl-N- (C_1-C_3) alkylsulfonyl (which may be substituted by halogen in the alkylsulfonyl moiety), (C_1-C_3) alkanoylamino (which may be substituted by halogen) or

(C_1-C_3) alkyl-N- (C_1-C_3) alkanoyl (which may be substituted by halogen in the alkanoyl moiety);

Ar^1 and Ar^2 are each, independently, thienyl, phenyl, fluorophenyl, chlorophenyl or bromophenyl;

A is $Y-(CH_2)_m-CH(R^2)-(CH_2)_n-NR^1-$;

R^1 is hydrogen, (C_1-C_3) alkyl, benzyl or $-(CH_2)_p-Y$;

R^2 is hydrogen, (C_1-C_3) alkyl (which may be substituted by a substituent selected from the group consisting of hydroxy, amino, methylthio and mercapto), benzyl, 4-hydroxybenzyl, 3-

indolylmethyl or $-(CH_2)_p-Y$;

Y is $-CN$, $-CH_2Z$ or $-COZ$;

-112-

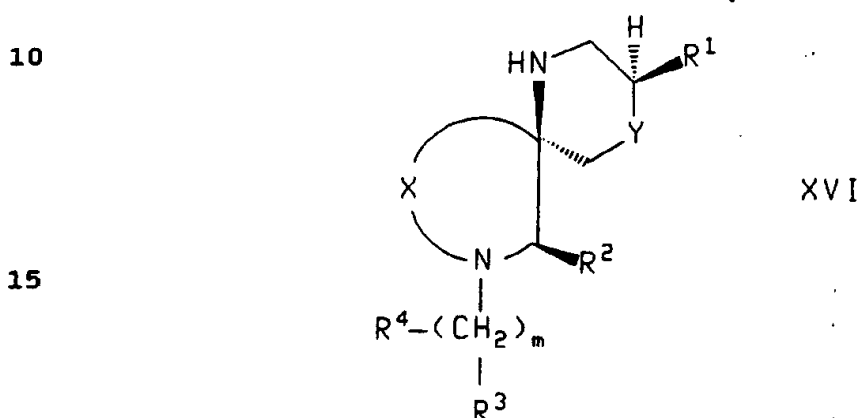
Z is hydroxy, amino, (C₁-C₃)alkoxy, (C₁-C₃)alkylamino or dialkylamino having from 1 to 5 carbon atoms in each alkyl moiety;

m, n and p are each, independently, 0, 1, 2 or 3; and

5 R¹ and R² may be connected to form a ring;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, that is effective in treating or preventing such disorder; or

(h) an amount of a compound of the formula



wherein R¹ is phenyl optionally substituted with one or more
 20 substituents, preferably with from one to three
 substituents, independently selected from hydrogen, halo,
 nitro, (C₁-C₁₀) alkyl optionally substituted with from one to
 three fluorine atoms, (C₁-C₁₀) alkoxy optionally substituted
 with from one to three fluorine atoms, trifluoromethyl,
 25 hydroxy, phenyl, cyano, amino, (C₁-C₆)-alkylamino,

30 di-(C₁-C₆)alkylamino, $\text{-}\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}\text{C-NH-(C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{)alkyl,}$

(C₁-C₆)alkyl- $\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}\text{C-NH-(C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{) alkyl, hydroxy(C}_1\text{-C}_4\text{)alkyl,}$

35 $\text{-NHCH}_2\text{-}$, -NHC(=O)- (C₁-C₆) alkyl, (C₁-C₄)alkoxy(C₁-C₄)alkyl, -S(O)_v-
 (C₁-C₁₀)-alkyl wherein v is zero, one or two, -S(O)_v-aryl
 wherein v is zero, one or two, -O-aryl, -SO₂NR⁴R⁵ wherein each
 40 of R⁴ and R⁵ is, independently, (C₁-C₆)alkyl, or R⁴ and R⁵,

-113-

together with the nitrogen to which they are attached, form a saturated ring containing one nitrogen and from 3 to 6

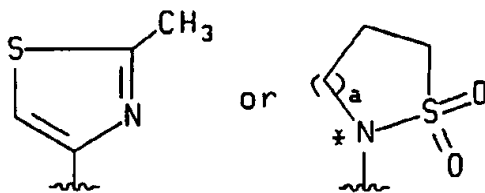
5 carbons, $(C_1-C_{10})alkyl-N-SO_2-(C_1-C_{10})alkyl$ wherein one or both of the alkyl moieties may optionally be substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms, $-N(SO_2-(C_1-C_{10})alkyl)_2$ and

10 $(C_1-C_{10})alkyl-N-SO_2-aryl$; and wherein the aryl moieties of

said $-S(O)_v-aryl$, $-O-aryl$ and $(C_1-C_{10})alkyl-N-SO_2-aryl$ are independently selected from phenyl and benzyl and may
15 optionally be substituted with from one to three substituents independently selected from $(C_1-C_4)alkyl$, $(C_1-C_4)alkoxy$ and halo;

or R^1 is phenyl substituted with a group having the formula

20

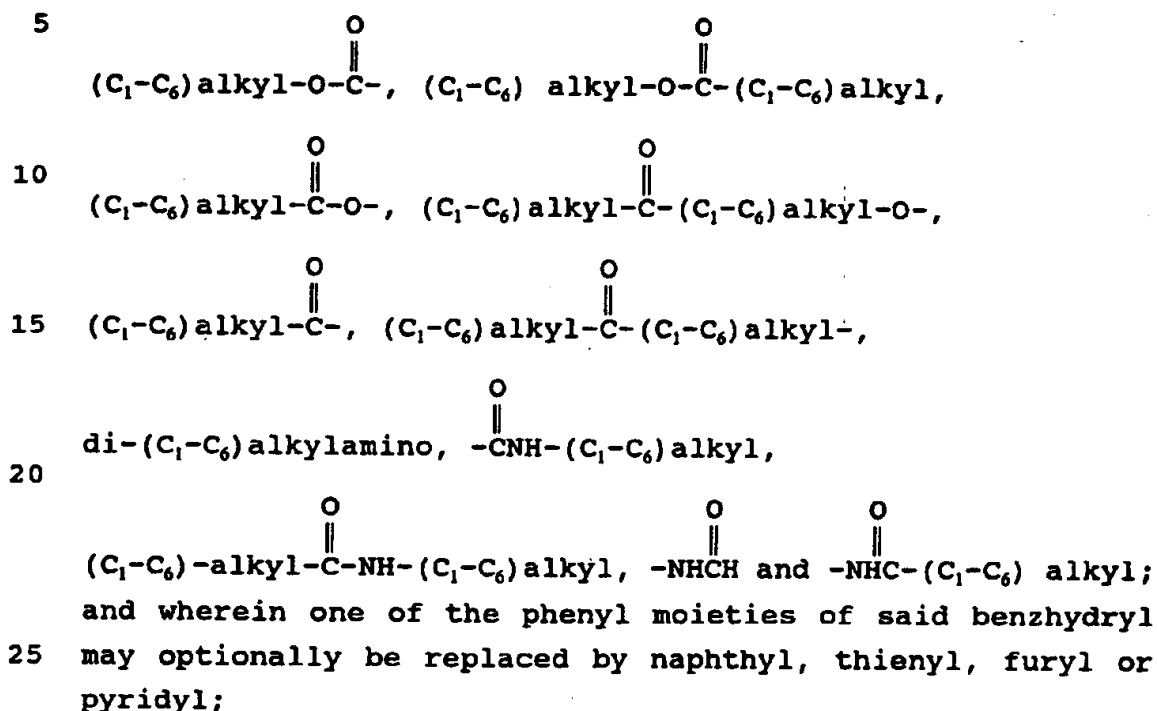


25 wherein a is 0, 1 or 2 and the asterisk represents a position meta to the point of attachment of R^1 ;

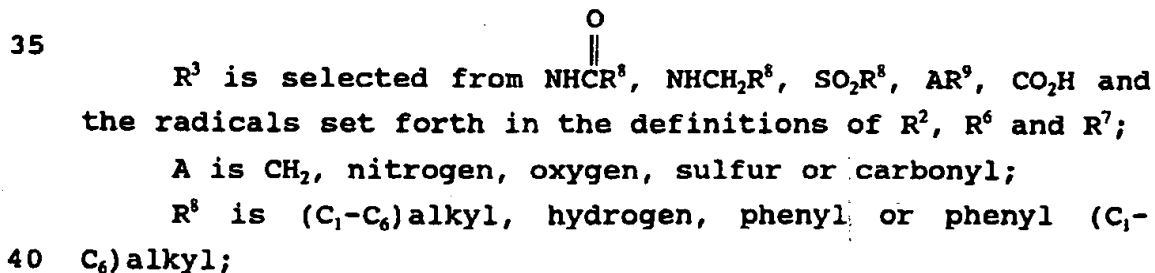
R^2 is selected from (C_1-C_6) straight or branched alkyl, (C_3-C_7) cycloalkyl wherein one of the carbon atoms may optionally be replaced by nitrogen, oxygen or sulfur; aryl
30 selected from biphenyl, phenyl, indanyl and naphthyl; heteroaryl selected from thienyl, furyl, pyridyl, thiazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxazolyl, isoxazolyl, triazolyl, tetrazolyl and quinolyl; phenyl (C_2-C_6) alkyl, benzhydryl and benzyl, wherein each of said aryl and heteroaryl groups and the
35 phenyl moieties of said benzyl, phenyl (C_2-C_6) alkyl and benzhydryl may optionally be substituted with one or more substituents, preferably with from one to three substituents, independently selected from halo, nitro, (C_1-C_{10}) alkyl optionally substituted with from one to three

-114-

fluorine atoms, (C₁-C₁₀) alkoxy optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms, amino, hydroxy-(C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₁-C₆)alkoxy-(C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₁-C₆)-alkylamino,



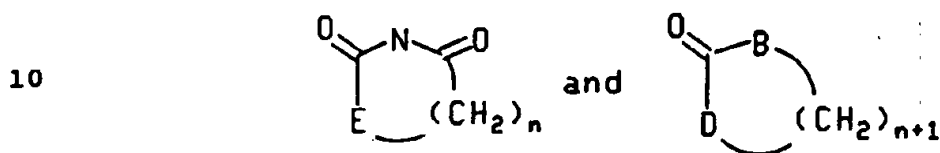
m is an integer from 0 to 8, and any one of the carbon-carbon single bonds of (CH₂)_m, wherein both carbon atoms of such bond are bonded to each other and to another carbon
 30 atom in the (CH₂)_m chain, may optionally be replaced by a carbon-carbon double bond or a carbon-carbon triple bond, and any one of the carbon atoms of said (CH₂)_m may optionally be substituted with R⁴;



R⁴ is selected from oximino (=NOH) and the radicals set forth in the definitions of R², R⁶ and R⁷;

-115-

R⁹ is a monocyclic or bicyclic heterocycle selected from the group consisting of pyrimidinyl, benzoxazolyl, 2,3-dihydro-3-oxobenzisulfonazol-2-yl, morpholin-1-yl, thiomorpholin-1-yl, benzofuranyl, benzothienyl, indolyl, isoindolyl, isoquinolinyl, furyl, pyridyl, isothiazolyl, oxazolyl, triazolyl, tetrazolyl, quinolyl, thiazolyl, thienyl, and groups of the formulae



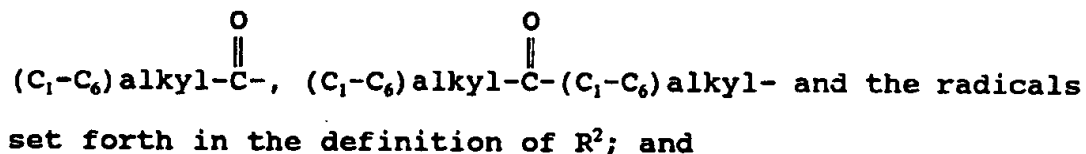
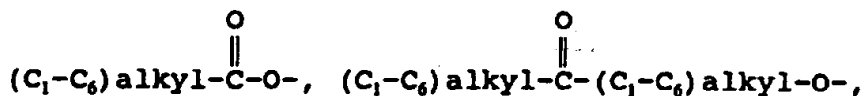
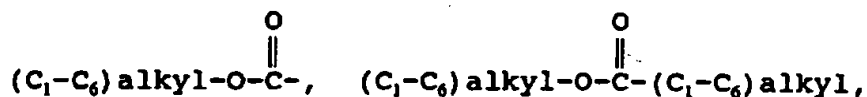
wherein B and D are selected from carbon, oxygen and nitrogen, and at least one of B and D is other than carbon; E is carbon or nitrogen; n is an integer from 1 to 5; any one of the carbon atoms of said (CH₂)_n and (CH₂)_{n+1} may be optionally substituted with (C₁-C₆)alkyl or (C₂-C₆)spiroalkyl; and either any one pair of the carbon atoms of said (CH₂)_n and (CH₂)_{n+1} may be bridged by a one or two carbon atom linkage, or any one pair of adjacent carbon atoms of said (CH₂)_n and (CH₂)_{n+1} may form, together with from one to three carbon atoms that are not members of the carbonyl containing ring, a (C₃-C₅) fused carbocyclic ring;

25 X is (CH₂)_q wherein q is two or three and wherein one of the carbon-carbon single bonds in said (CH₂)_q may optionally be replaced by a carbon-carbon double bond, and wherein any one of the carbon atoms of said (CH₂)_q may optionally be substituted with R⁶, and wherein any one of the carbon atoms of said (CH₂)_q may optionally be substituted with R⁷;

R⁶ and R⁷ are independently selected from hydrogen, hydroxy, halo, amino, oxo (=O), cyano, hydroxy-(C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₁-C₆)alkoxy-(C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₁-C₆)alkylamino,

35 di-(C₁-C₆)alkylamino, (C₁-C₆)alkoxy, $\begin{array}{c} \text{O} \\ \parallel \\ -\text{C}-\text{OH} \end{array}$,

-116-

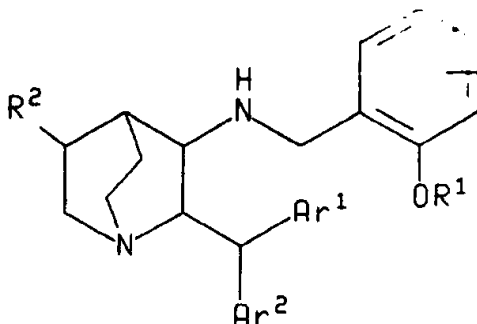


Y is $(CH_2)_z$, wherein z is zero or one;

with the proviso that: (a) when A is $-(CH_2)-$ or carbonyl, R^9 cannot be furyl, pyridyl, isothiazolyl, oxazolyl, triazolyl, tetrazolyl, quinolyl, thiazolyl or thienyl; (b) when m is zero, one of R^3 and R^4 is absent and the other is hydrogen; and (c) when R^6 or R^7 is attached to a carbon atom of X that is adjacent to the ring nitrogen, then R^6 or R^7 , respectively, must be a substituent wherein the point of attachment is a carbon atom;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, that is effective in treating or preventing such disorder; or

(i) an amount of a compound of the formula



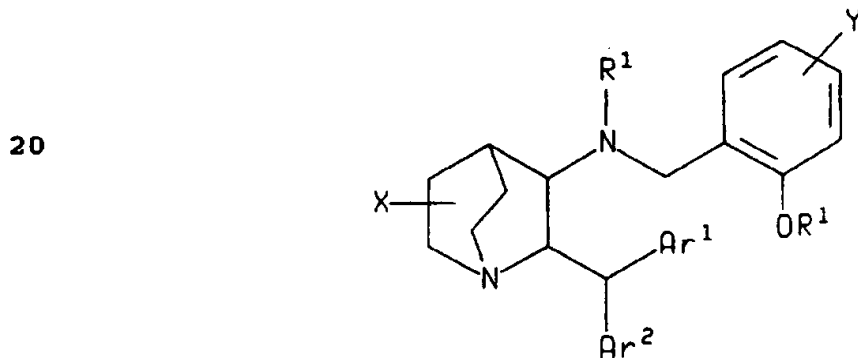
XVII

wherein Ar^1 and Ar^2 are each independently aryl or substituted aryl;

R^1 is alkyl having from 1 to 6 carbon atoms;

-117-

- R^2 is hydrogen or alkyl having from 1 to 6 carbon atoms;
 and either X and Y are taken separately and they are
 each, independently, hydrogen, dialkylphosphoryl having from
 2 to 12 carbon atoms, alkyl having from 1 to 6 carbon atoms;
 5 or X and Y are taken together and they represent a
 hydrocarbon chain having 3, 4, or 5 carbon atoms, optionally
 containing up to 2 double bonds and optionally having 1 or
 2 substituents selected from oxo, hydroxy and alkyl having
 from 1 to 6 carbon atoms;
 10 provided that when X and Y are taken together they are
 attached to adjacent carbon atoms; and
 provided that if either X or Y is hydrogen, then the
 other one must be alkenyl or alkynyl;
 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, that is
 15 effective in treating or preventing such disorder; or
 (j) an amount of a compound of the formula



XVIII

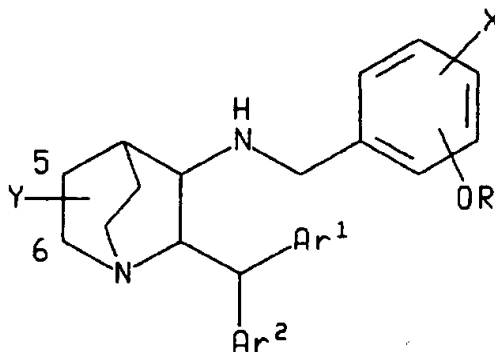
- wherein Ar^1 and Ar^2 are each, independently, thienyl,
 30 phenyl, fluorophenyl, chlorophenyl or bromophenyl;
 X is $-CONR^3R^4$, $-CO_2R^3$, CH_2OR^3 , $-CH_2NR^3R^4$ or $-CONR^3OR^4$;
 R^1 , R^3 and R^4 are each, independently, hydrogen or alkyl
 having 1 to 4 carbon atoms;
 R^2 is alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms;
 35 Y is alkylsulfonyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, N-alkyl-
 N-alkanoylamino (which may be substituted by halogen in the

-118-

alkanoyl moiety) having 1 to 4 carbon atoms in the alkyl and the alkanoyl moieties, N-alkyl-N-alkylsulfonylamino (which may be substituted by halogen in the alkylsulfonyl moiety) having 1 to 4 carbon atoms in the alkyl and the alkyl sulfonyl moieties, alkenyl having 2 to 4 carbon atoms, alkynyl having 2 to 4 carbon atoms, halosubstituted alkyl having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, alkylamino having 1 to 4 carbon atoms, alkanoylamino (which may be substituted by halogen) having 1 to 4 carbon atoms or alkylsulfonylamino (which may be substituted by halogen) having 1 to 4 carbon atoms;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof that is effective in treating or preventing disorder; or

(k) an amount of a compound of the formula



XIX

wherein R is C₁-C₆ alkyl;

X is C₁-C₆ alkyl having one or more substituents bonded through a heteroatom;

Ar¹ and Ar² are each, independently, aryl optionally substituted by one C₁-C₆ alkyl, C₁-C₆ alkoxy, C₁-C₆ alkylthio, halogen, cyano, nitro, phenoxy, mono C₁-C₆ alkylamino, di C₁-C₆ alkylamino, halosubstituted C₁-C₆ alkyl, or halosubstituted C₁-C₆ alkyl;

Y is hydrogen, C₁-C₆ alkyl, C₂-C₆ alkenyl, C₃-C₈ cycloalkyl, Z-(CH₂)_p-, or W-(CH₂)_n-CHR²-(CH₂)_m-NR¹CO- wherein Y is at the 4-, 5- or 6-position on the quinuclidine ring;

-119-

R^1 is hydrogen, C_1-C_6 alkyl, benzyl or $-(CH_2)_p-W$;

R^2 is hydrogen or C_1-C_6 alkyl which may be substituted by one hydroxy, amino, methylthio, mercapto, benzyl, 4-hydroxybenzyl, 3-indolylmethyl or $-(CH_2)_r-W$;

5 Z is C_1-C_6 alkoxy, $-CONR^4R^5$, $-CO_2R^4$, $-CHR^4OR^5$, $-CHR^4NR^5R^6$, $-COR^4$, $-CONR^4OR^5$ or optionally substituted aryl;

each W is independently cyano, hydroxymethyl, C_2-C_6 alkoxymethyl, aminomethyl, mono C_1-C_6 alkylaminomethyl, di C_1-C_6 alkylaminomethyl, carboxyl, carbamoyl or C_1-C_6 alkoxycarbonyl;

R^4 , R^5 and R^6 are independently hydrogen, C_1-C_6 alkyl, C_1-C_6 alkoxy, C_3-C_8 cycloalkyl or an optionally substituted aryl or heterocyclic group;

p is 0 to 6; and

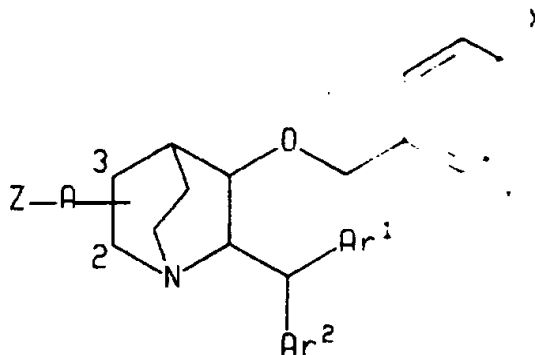
15 m , n and r are each, independently, 0 to 3;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, that is effective in treating or preventing such disorders; or

(1) an amount of a compound of the formula

20

25



30

XX

wherein X and Y are each hydrogen, halo, C_1-C_6 alkyl, halosubstituted C_1-C_6 alkyl, C_1-C_6 alkoxy, C_1-C_6 alkylthio, C_1-C_6 alkylsulfinyl, C_1-C_6 alkylsulfonyl or tri C_1-C_6 alkylsilyl;

Ar^1 and Ar^2 are each aryl optionally substituted by halo;

A is $-CO-$ or $-(CH_2)-$;

-120-

Z-A- is at the 2 or 3 position on the quinuclidine ring;

Z is hydroxy, C₁-C₆ alkoxy, NR¹R² or W¹-(CH₂)_m-CHR⁴-(CH₂)_n-NR³ wherein

5 R¹ and R², when taken separately, are each hydrogen or C₁-C₆ alkyl;

R¹ and R², when taken together with the nitrogen atom to which they are attached, represent piperidino, pyrrolidino, morpholino, thiomorpholino or piperazino;

10 R³ is hydrogen, C₁-C₆ alkyl, benzyl or -(CH₂)_n-W²;

R⁴ is hydrogen or C₁-C₆ alkyl which may be substituted by hydroxy, amino, methylthio, mercapto, benzyl, 4-hydroxybenzyl, 3-indolylmethyl or -(CH₂)_n-W³;

R³ and R⁴, when taken together, represent CH₂ or CH₂CH₂;

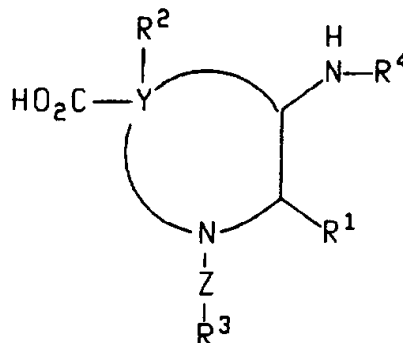
15 W¹, W² and W³ are each cyano, hydroxymethyl, C₂-C₆ alkoxymethyl, aminomethyl, (C₁-C₆ alkylamino)methyl, (di C₁-C₆ alkylamino)methyl, carboxyl, (C₁-C₆ alkyl)carbonyl, or (di C₁-C₆ alkyl)carbonyl, carbonyl or (C₁-C₆ alkoxy)carbonyl; and

20 m, n, r and s are each 0, 1, 2 or 3;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof that is effective in treating or preventing such disorder; or

(m) an amount of a compound of the formula

25



30

XXI

35 wherein Y is C₂-C₄ alkylene;

Z is a valence bond or C₁-C₆ alkylene;

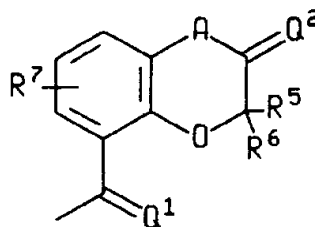
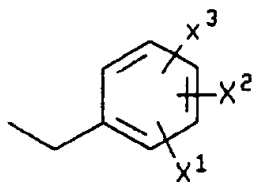
-121-

R¹ is phenyl, biphenyl, indanyl, naphthyl, thienyl, furyl, pyridyl, thiazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxazolyl, isoxazolyl, tetrazolyl, quinolyl, phenyl C₁-C₆ alkyl- or benzhydryl, wherein each of the ring moieties may optionally
 5 be substituted by one or more substituents independently selected from halogen, C₁-C₆ alkyl, halosubstituted C₁-C₆ alkyl, C₁-C₆ alkoxy and halosubstituted C₁-C₆ alkoxy;

R² is hydrogen or C₁-C₆ alkyl;

R³ is hydrogen, hydroxy, cyano, amino or carboxy; and

10 R⁴ represents a group of the formula (II) or (III)



II

III

wherein X¹, X² and X³ are each halo, hydrogen, nitro, C₁-
 20 C₆ alkyl, halosubstituted C₁-C₆ alkoxy, halosubstituted C₁-C₆ alkoxy, hydroxy, amino, C₁-C₆ alkylthio, C₁-C₆ alkylsulfinyl or C₁-C₆ alkylsulfonyl;

Q¹ and Q² are each H₂, oxygen or sulfur;

A is valence bond, methylene, oxygen, sulfur or NH;

25 R⁵ and R⁶ are each hydrogen or C₁-C₆ alkyl; and

R⁶ is hydrogen, halogen, C₁-C₆ alkyl, halosubstituted C₁-C₆ alkyl or C₁-C₆ alkoxy;

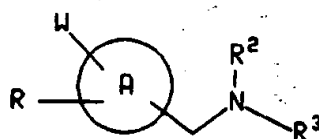
provided that when Z is a valence bond, R³ must be hydrogen;

30 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, that is effective in treating or preventing such disorder.

2. A method according to claim 1, wherein the compound administered is a compound of the formula

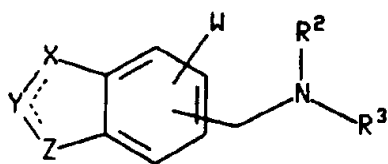
35.

-122-



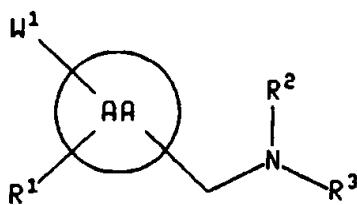
Ia

5



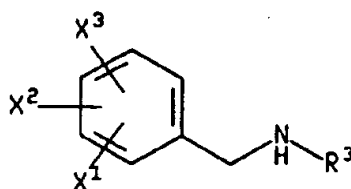
Ib

10



Ic

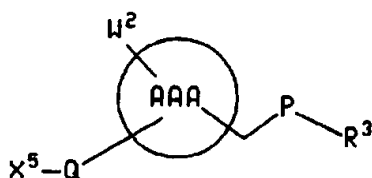
15



Id

20

25



Ie

30

wherein A is a ring system selected from phenyl, naphthyl, thienyl, quinolinyl and indolinyl, and wherein the sidechain
 35 containing NR²R³ is attached to a carbon atom of ring system A;

-123-

AA is an aryl group selected from phenyl, naphthyl, thienyl, dihydroquinoliny and indoliny, and wherein the sidechain containing NR^2R^3 is attached to a carbon atom of AA;

- 5 AAA is an aryl group selected from phenyl, naphthyl, thienyl, dihydroquinoliny and indoliny, and wherein the $-\text{CH}_2\text{PR}^3$ sidechain is attached to a carbon atom of ring AAA;
P is NR^2 , O, S, SO or SO_2 ;

- 10 Q is SO_2 , NH, $-\text{N}(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}$ or $(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}-\text{N}-\text{SO}_2-$

wherein the point of attachment of said $(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}-\text{N}-\text{SO}_2-$ to ring AAA is the nitrogen atom and the point of attachment to

- 15 X^5 is the sulfur atom;

W^1 is hydrogen, halo or (C_1-C_6) alkyl, $\text{S}-(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_3)\text{alkyl}$, halo or (C_1-C_6) alkoxy optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms;

- 20 W^2 is hydrogen, $(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}$, $\text{S}-(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_3)\text{alkyl}$, halo or $(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkoxy}$ optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms;

- W is hydrogen, $(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}$ optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms, $-\text{S}(\text{O})_v-(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}$ wherein v is zero, one or two, halo or $(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkoxy}$ optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms;

X^1 is hydrogen, $(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_{10})$ alkoxy optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms or $(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_{10})$ alkyl optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms;

- 30 X^2 and X^3 are independently selected from hydrogen, halo, nitro, $(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_{10})$ alkyl optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms, $(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_{10})$ alkoxy optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms, trifluoromethyl, hydroxy, phenyl, cyano, amino, $(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)-$

35

alkylamino, di- (C_1-C_6) alkylamino, $-\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}\text{C}-\text{NH}-(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}$, (C_1-C_6)

-124-

alkyl-C(=O)-NH-(C₁-C₆) alkyl, hydroxy(C₁-C₄) alkyl, (C₁-C₄) alkoxy(C₁-

5 C₄) alkyl, -NHCH(=O) and -NHC(=O)-(C₁-C₆) alkyl;

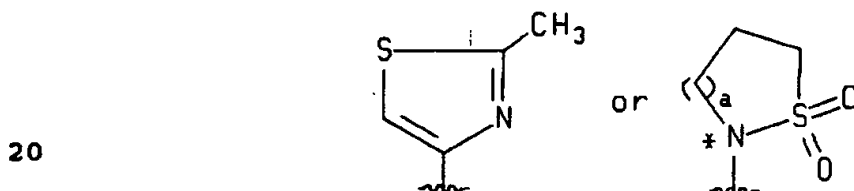
X⁵ is a four to six membered heterocyclic ring containing from one to three heteroatoms selected from
 10 sulfur, nitrogen and oxygen (e.g., thiazolyl, pyrrolyl, thienyl, triazolyl, oxazolyl, oxadiazolyl, thiadiazolyl or imidazolyl), wherein said heterocyclic ring may optionally be substituted with from one to three substituents, preferably with from zero to two substituents, independently
 15 selected from phenyl, (C₁-C₆) alkyl optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms, (C₁-C₆) alkoxy optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms and halo;

R is a 4, 5 or 6 membered heterocyclic ring containing
 20 from one to three heteroatoms selected from oxygen, nitrogen and sulfur (e.g., thiazolyl, azetidyl, pyrrolyl, pyrazolyl, 1,2,3-triazolyl, 1,2,4-triazolyl, isothiazolyl, imidazolyl, isoxazolyl, or oxazolyl) wherein said heterocyclic ring may contain from zero to three double
 25 bonds and may optionally be substituted with one or more substituents, preferably one or two substituents, independently selected from (C₁-C₆) alkyl optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms and (C₁-C₆) alkoxy optionally substituted with from one to three
 30 fluorine atoms;

R¹ is selected from amino, (C₁-C₆) alkylamino, di-(C₁-C₆) alkylamino, -S(O)_v-(C₁-C₁₀)-alkyl wherein v is zero, one or two, -S(O)_v-aryl wherein v is zero, one or two, -O-aryl, -SO₂NR⁴R⁵ wherein each of R⁴ and R⁵ is, independently, (C₁-
 35 C₆) alkyl, or R⁴ and R⁵, together with the nitrogen to which they are attached, form a saturated ring containing one nitrogen and from 3 to 6

-125-

carbons, $\text{-NHC(C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{)alkyl}$, -NHCCF_3 , $\text{(C}_1\text{-C}_{10}\text{)alkyl-N-SO}_2\text{-(C}_1\text{-C}_{10}\text{)alkyl}$ wherein one or both of the alkyl moieties may
 5 optionally be substituted with from one to three fluorine
 atoms, $\text{-N(SO}_2\text{-(C}_1\text{-C}_{10}\text{)alkyl)}_2$ and $\text{(C}_1\text{-C}_{10}\text{)alkyl-N-SO}_2\text{-aryl}$; and
 10 wherein the aryl moieties of said $\text{-S(O)}_v\text{-aryl}$, -O-aryl and
 $\text{(C}_1\text{-C}_{10}\text{)alkyl-N-SO}_2\text{-aryl}$ are independently selected from
 phenyl and benzyl and may optionally be substituted with
 from one to three substituents independently selected from
 15 $\text{(C}_1\text{-C}_4\text{)alkyl}$, $\text{(C}_1\text{-C}_4\text{)alkoxy}$ and halo;
 or R^1 is a group having the formula



wherein a is 0, 1 or 2 and the asterisk represents a position meta to the $\text{R}^2\text{R}^3\text{NCH}_2$ side chain;

the dotted lines in formula Ib represent that one of
 25 the X-Y and Y-Z bonds may optionally be a double bond;

X is selected from =CH- , $\text{-CH}_2\text{-}$, -O- , -S- , -SO- , $\text{-SO}_2\text{-}$, $\text{-N(R}^4\text{)-}$, -NH- , =N- , $\text{-CH[(C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{)alkyl]-}$, $\text{=C[(C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{)alkyl]-}$, $\text{-CH(C}_6\text{H}_5\text{)-}$ and $\text{=C(C}_6\text{H}_5\text{)-}$;

Y is selected from C=O , C=NR^4 , C=S , =CH- , $\text{-CH}_2\text{-}$, $\text{=C[(C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{)alkyl]-}$, $\text{-CH[(C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{)alkyl]-}$, $\text{=C(C}_6\text{H}_5\text{)-}$, $\text{-CH(C}_6\text{H}_5\text{)-}$, =N- , -NH- , $\text{-N(R}^4\text{)-}$, =C(halo)- , $\text{=C(OR}^4\text{)-}$, $\text{=C(SR}^4\text{)-}$, $\text{=C(NR}^4\text{)-}$, -O- , -S- and SO_2 , wherein the phenyl moieties of said $\text{=C(C}_6\text{H}_5\text{)-}$ and $\text{-CH(C}_6\text{H}_5\text{)-}$ may optionally be substituted with from one to
 30 three substituents independently selected from
 trifluoromethyl and halo, and wherein the alkyl moieties of
 35 said $\text{=[(C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{)alkyl]-}$ and $\text{-CH[(C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{)alkyl]-}$ may optionally be substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms;

Z is selected from =CH- , $\text{-CH}_2\text{-}$, =N- , -NH- , -S- ,

-126-

$-N(R^4)-$, $=C(C_6H_5)-$, $-CH(C_6H_5)-$, $=C[(C_1-C_6) \text{ alkyl}]-$ and $-CH[(C_1-C_6) \text{ alkyl}]-$;

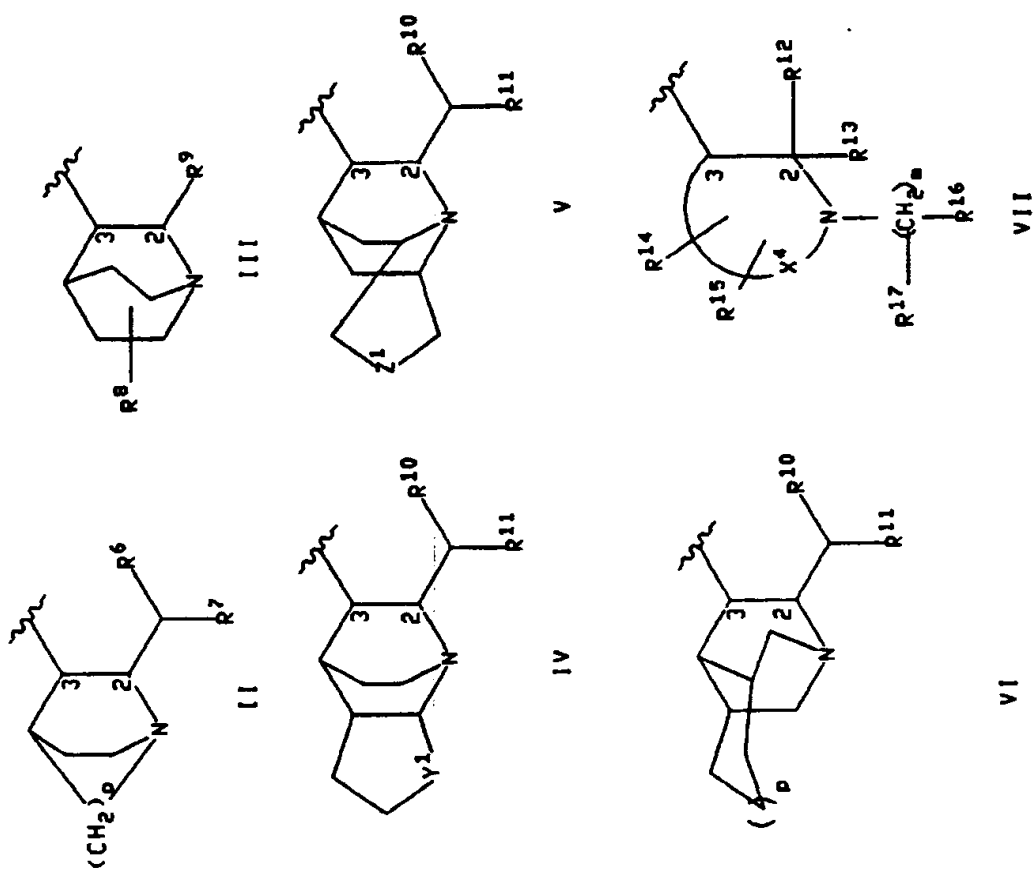
or X, Y and Z, together with the two carbon atoms shared between the benzo ring and the XYZ ring, form a fused
5 pyridine or pyrimidine ring;

R^4 is (C_1-C_6) alkyl or phenyl;

R^2 is hydrogen or $-CO_2(C_1-C_{10}) \text{ alkyl}$;

R^3 is selected from

-127-

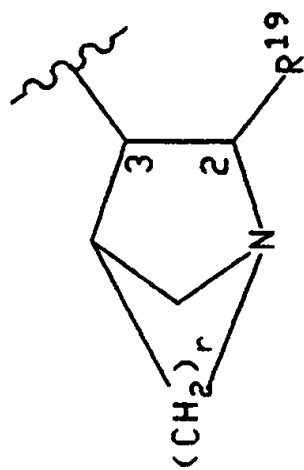


5

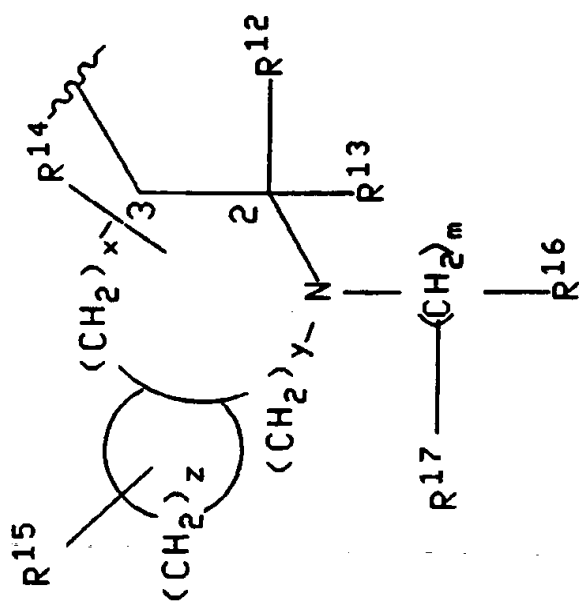
10

15

20



and

XI
I

viii

-129-

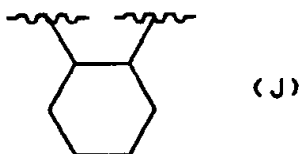
wherein R^6 and R^{10} are independently selected from furyl, thienyl, pyridyl, indolyl, biphenyl and phenyl, wherein said phenyl may optionally be substituted with one or two substituents independently selected from halo, (C_1-C_{10}) alkyl
 5 optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms, (C_1-C_{10}) alkoxy optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms, carboxy, benzyloxycarbonyl and (C_1-C_3) alkoxy-carbonyl;

R^7 is selected from (C_3-C_4) branched alkyl, (C_5-C_6)
 10 branched alkenyl, (C_3-C_7) cycloalkyl, and the radicals named in the definition of R^6 ;

R^8 is hydrogen or (C_1-C_6) alkyl;

R^9 and R^{19} are independently selected from phenyl, biphenyl, naphthyl, pyridyl, benzhydryl, thienyl and furyl,
 15 and R^9 and R^{19} may optionally be substituted with from one to three substituents independently selected from halo, (C_1-C_{10}) alkyl optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms and (C_1-C_{10}) alkoxy optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms;

20 Y^1 is $(CH_2)_l$, wherein l is an integer from one to three, or Y^1 is a group of the formula



25

Z^1 is oxygen, sulfur, amino, (C_1-C_3) alkylamino or $(CH_2)_n$,
 wherein n is zero, one or two;

x is an integer from zero to four;

30 y is an integer from zero to four;

z is an integer from one to six, wherein the ring containing $(CH_2)_z$ may contain from zero to three double bonds, and one of the carbons of $(CH_2)_z$ may optionally be replaced by oxygen, sulfur or nitrogen;

35 o is two or three;

p is zero or one;

-130-

r is one, two or three;

R¹¹ is thienyl, biphenyl or phenyl optionally substituted with one or two substituents independently selected from halo, (C₁-C₁₀) alkyl optionally substituted with
5 from one to three fluorine atoms and (C₁-C₁₀) alkoxy optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms;

X⁴ is (CH₂)_q wherein q is an integer from 1 to 6, and wherein any one of the carbon-carbon single bonds in said
10 (CH₂)_q may optionally be replaced by a carbon-carbon double bond, and wherein any one of the carbon atoms of said (CH₂)_q may optionally be substituted with R¹⁴, and wherein any one of the carbon atoms of said (CH₂)_q may optionally be substituted with R¹⁵;

15 m is an integer from 0 to 8, and any one of the carbon-carbon single bonds of (CH₂)_m, wherein both carbon atoms of such bond are bonded to each other and to another carbon atom in the (CH₂)_m chain, may optionally be replaced by a carbon-carbon double bond or a carbon-carbon triple
20 bond, and any one of the carbon atoms of said (CH₂)_m may optionally be substituted with R¹⁷;

R¹² is a radical selected from hydrogen, (C₁-C₆) straight or branched alkyl, (C₃-C₇)cycloalkyl wherein one of the carbon atoms may optionally be replaced by nitrogen, oxygen
25 or sulfur; aryl selected from biphenyl, phenyl, indanyl and naphthyl; heteroaryl selected from thienyl, furyl, pyridyl, thiazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxazolyl, isoxazolyl, triazolyl, tetrazolyl and quinolyl; phenyl-(C₂-C₆)alkyl, benzhydryl and benzyl, wherein the point of attachment on R¹² is a carbon
30 atom unless R¹² is hydrogen, and wherein each of said aryl and heteroaryl groups and the phenyl moieties of said benzyl, phenyl-(C₂-C₆)alkyl and benzhydryl may optionally be substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from halo, nitro, (C₁-C₁₀)alkyl optionally
35 substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms, (C₁-C₁₀)alkoxy optionally substituted with

-131-

from one to three fluorine atoms, amino, hydroxy-(C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₁-C₆)alkoxy-(C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₁-C₆)-alkylamino,

5 (C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-C(=O)-, (C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-C(=O)-(C₁-C₆)alkyl,

10 (C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-O-, (C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-,

(C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-, (C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-,

15 di-(C₁-C₆)alkylamino, -C(=O)NH-(C₁-C₆)alkyl,

20 (C₁-C₆)-alkyl-C(=O)NH-(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -NHCH(=O) and -NHC(=O)-(C₁-C₆)alkyl;
and wherein one of the phenyl moieties of said benzhydryl may optionally be replaced by naphthyl, thienyl, furyl or pyridyl;

25 R¹³ is hydrogen, phenyl or (C₁-C₆)alkyl;

or R¹² and R¹³, together with the carbon to which they are attached, form a saturated carbocyclic ring having from 3 to 7 carbon atoms wherein one of said carbon atoms that is neither the point of attachment of the spiro ring nor adjacent to it may optionally be replaced by oxygen, nitrogen or sulfur;

30 R¹⁴ and R¹⁵ are each independently selected from hydrogen, hydroxy, halo, amino, oxo (=O), cyano, hydroxy-(C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₁-C₆)alkoxy-(C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₁-C₆)alkylamino,

35 di-(C₁-C₆)alkylamino, (C₁-C₆)alkoxy, -C(=O)OH,

40 (C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-C(=O)-, (C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-C(=O)-(C₁-C₆)alkyl,

45 (C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-O-, (C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-,

-132-

$(C_1-C_6)alkyl-\overset{\overset{O}{\parallel}}{C}-$, $(C_1-C_6)alkyl-\overset{\overset{O}{\parallel}}{C}-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-$, and the radicals

5 set forth in the definition of R^{12} ;

R^{16} is $NH\overset{\overset{O}{\parallel}}{C}R^{18}$, $NHCH_2R^{18}$, SO_2R^{18} , $GR^{20}CO_2H$ or one of the
10 radicals set forth in any of the definitions of R^{12} , R^{14} and R^{15} ;

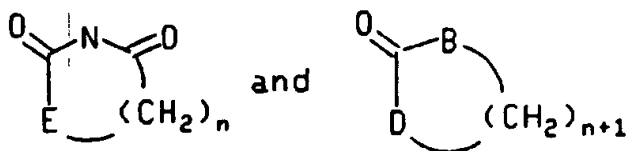
R^{17} is oximino ($=NOH$) or one of the radicals set forth in any of the definitions of R^{12} , R^{14} and R^{15} ; and

R^{18} is $(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, hydrogen, phenyl or phenyl $(C_1-$
15 $C_6)alkyl$;

G is selected from the group consisting of CH_2 , nitrogen, oxygen, sulfur and carbonyl;

R^{20} is a monocyclic or bicyclic heterocycle selected from the group consisting of pyrimidinyl, benzoxazolyl,
20 2,3-dihydro-3-oxobenzisulfonazol-2-yl, morpholin-1-yl, thiomorpholin-1-yl, benzofuranyl, benzothienyl, indolyl, isoindolyl, isoquinolinyl, furyl, pyridyl, isothiazolyl, oxazolyl, triazolyl, tetrazolyl, quinolyl, thiazolyl, thienyl, and groups of the formulae

25



30

wherein B and D are selected from carbon, oxygen, and nitrogen, and at least one of B and D is other than carbon; E is carbon or nitrogen; n is an integer from 1 to 5; and any one of the carbons of the $(CH_2)_n$ or $(CH_2)_{n+1}$ may be
35 optionally substituted with $(C_1-C_6)alkyl$ or $(C_2-C_6)spiroalkyl$, and either any two of the carbon atoms of said $(CH_2)_n$ and $(CH_2)_{n+1}$ may be bridged by a one or two carbon atom linkag, or any one pair of adjacent carbons of said $(CH_2)_n$ and $(CH_2)_{n+1}$ may form, together with from one to three carbon

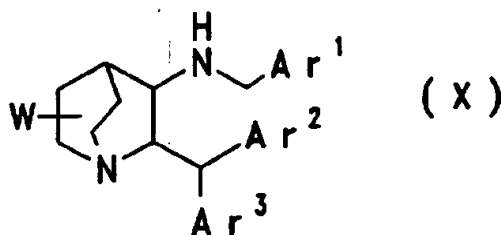
-133-

atoms that are not members of the carbonyl containing ring,
a (C₃-C₆) fused carbocyclic ring;

with the proviso that (a) when m is 0, one of R¹⁶ and R¹⁷
is absent and the other is hydrogen, (b) when R³ is a group
5 of the formula VIII, R¹⁴ and R¹⁵ cannot be attached to the
same carbon atom, (c) when R¹⁴ and R¹⁵ are attached to the
same carbon atom, then either each of R¹⁴ and R¹⁵ is
independently selected from hydrogen, fluoro, (C₁-C₆)alkyl,
hydroxy-(C₁-C₆)alkyl and (C₁-C₆)alkoxy-(C₁-C₆)alkyl, or R¹⁴ and
10 R¹⁵, together with the carbon to which they are attached,
form a (C₃-C₆) saturated carbocyclic ring that forms a spiro
compound with the nitrogen-containing ring to which they are
attached; (d) R¹² and R¹³ cannot both be hydrogen; (e) when R¹⁴
or R¹⁵ is attached to a carbon atom of X⁴ or (CH₂)₂, that is
15 adjacent to the ring nitrogen, then R¹⁴ or R¹⁵, respectively,
must be a substituent wherein the point of attachment is a
carbon atom; and (f) neither R¹⁴, R¹⁵, R¹⁶ nor R¹⁷ can form a
ring with R¹³;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

20 3. A method according to claim 1, wherein the
compound administered is a compound having the formula



wherein W is Y or X(CH₂)_n;

Y is optionally substituted (C₁-C₆)alkyl, optionally
30 substituted (C₂-C₆)alkenyl or optionally substituted (C₃-
C₈)cycloalkyl;

X is optionally substituted (C₁-C₆)alkoxy, hydroxy,
CONR¹R², CO₂R¹, CHR¹OR², CHR¹NR²R³, COR¹, CONR¹OR² or optionally
substituted aryl, wherein said aryl is selected from phenyl,
35 naphthyl, pyridyl, quinolyl, thienyl, furyl, phenoxyphenyl,

-134-

oxazolyl, tetrazolyl, thiazolyl, imidazolyl and pyrazolyl; and n is an integer from zero to six;

Ar¹, Ar² and Ar³ are each, independently, optionally substituted aryl, wherein said aryl is selected from phenyl, naphthyl, pyridyl, quinolyl, thienyl, furyl, phenoxyphenyl, oxazolyl, tetrazolyl, thiazolyl, imidazolyl and pyrazolyl;

and R¹, R² and R³ are independently selected from hydrogen, optionally substituted (C₁-C₆)alkyl, optionally substituted (C₁-C₆)alkoxy, optionally substituted (C₃-C₈)cycloalkyl, optionally substituted aryl, wherein said aryl is selected from phenyl, naphthyl, pyridyl, quinolyl, thienyl, furyl, phenoxyphenyl, oxazolyl, tetrazolyl, thiazolyl, imidazolyl and pyrazolyl; and optionally substituted (C₁-C₅)heterocyclic groups, wherein said heterocyclic groups are selected from pyrrolidino, piperidino, morpholino, piperazinyl and thiamorpholino;

and wherein the substituents on the foregoing substituted alkyl, alkenyl, cycloalkyl and alkoxy groups are independently selected from halo, nitro, amino, (C₁-C₄)alkyl, (C₁-C₄)alkoxy, trifluoromethyl and trifluoromethoxy;

and wherein the substituents on the foregoing substituted (C₁-C₅) heterocyclic groups are attached to a sulfur or nitrogen atom on the ring and are independently selected from oxygen, di-oxygen and (C₁-C₄)alkyl when attached to a ring sulfur atom, and are independently selected from oxygen and (C₁-C₄)alkyl when attached to a ring nitrogen atom;

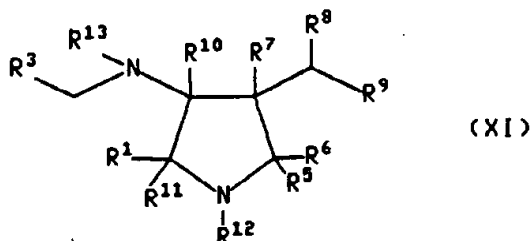
and wherein the substituents on said substituted Ar¹ groups are independently selected from (C₁-C₆)alkyl optionally substituted with from one to three halo groups, (C₁-C₆)alkoxy optionally substituted with from one to three halo groups, (C₁-C₆)alkylsulfinyl, (C₂-C₆)alkenyl, (C₁-C₆)alkylthio, (C₁-C₆)alkylsulfonyl, (C₁-C₆)alkylsulfonylamino, and di-(C₁-C₆)alkylamino wherein one or both of the alkyl groups may be optionally substituted with a (C₁-C₆)alkylsulfonyl, or (C₁-C₆)alkylsulfinyl group;

-135-

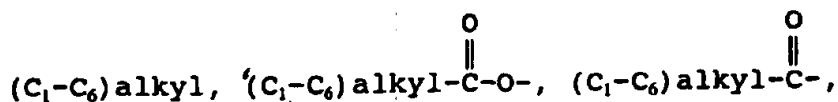
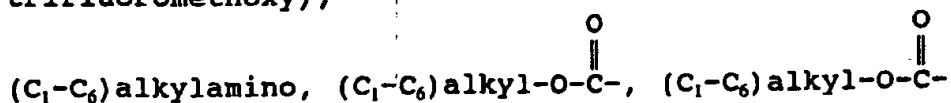
and wherein the substituents on said substituted Ar² and Ar³ groups are independently selected from (C₁-C₄)alkyl, (C₁-C₄)alkoxy, (C₁-C₄)alkylthio, (C₁-C₄)alkylsulfinyl, di-(C₁-C₄)alkylamino, trifluoromethyl and trifluoromethoxy; with the proviso that when Y is unsubstituted or is substituted with (C₁-C₄)alkyl, it is attached to the 4- or 6-position of the quinuclidine ring;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt of such compound.

4. A method according to claim 1, wherein the compound administered is a compound having the formula



wherein R¹ is selected from hydrogen, (C₁-C₆) straight or branched alkyl, (C₃-C₇) cycloalkyl wherein one of the carbon atoms may optionally be replaced by nitrogen, oxygen or sulfur; aryl selected from phenyl, biphenyl, indanyl and naphthyl; heteroaryl selected from thienyl, furyl, pyridyl, thiazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxazolyl, isoxazolyl, triazolyl, tetrazolyl and quinolyl; phenyl (C₂-C₆) alkyl, benzhydryl and benzyl, wherein each of said aryl and heteroaryl groups and the phenyl moieties of said benzyl, phenyl (C₁-C₆) alkyl and benzhydryl may optionally be substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from halo, nitro, (C₁-C₆) alkyl optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms, (C₁-C₆) alkoxy, amino, trihaloalkoxy (e.g., trifluoromethoxy),



-136-

- $(C_1-C_6)alkyl-O-$, $(C_1-C_6)alkyl-\overset{\overset{O}{\parallel}}{C}-$, $(C_1-C_6)alkyl-\overset{\overset{O}{\parallel}}{C}-$,
 5 $(C_1-C_6)alkyl-$, $di-(C_1-C_6)alkylamino$, $-\overset{\overset{O}{\parallel}}{C}NH-(C_1-C_6)alkyl$,
 10 $(C_1-C_6)alkyl-\overset{\overset{O}{\parallel}}{C}NH-(C_1-C_6)alkyl-$, $-\overset{\overset{O}{\parallel}}{N}HCH$ and $-\overset{\overset{O}{\parallel}}{N}HC-(C_1-C_6)alkyl$;
 and wherein one of the phenyl moieties of said benzhydryl
 may optionally be replaced by naphthyl, thienyl, furyl or
 pyridyl;
 15 R^3 is aryl selected from phenyl and naphthyl; heteroaryl
 selected from indanyl, thienyl, furyl, pyridyl, thiazolyl,
 isothiazolyl, oxazolyl, isoxazolyl, triazolyl, tetrazolyl
 and quinolyl; and cycloalkyl having 3 to 7 carbon atoms
 wherein one of said carbon atoms may optionally be replaced
 20 by nitrogen, oxygen or sulfur; wherein each of said aryl and
 heteroaryl groups may optionally be substituted with one or
 more substituents, and said (C_3-C_7) cycloalkyl may optionally
 be substituted with one or two substituents, each of said
 substituents being independently selected from halo, nitro,
 25 $(C_1-C_6)alkyl$ optionally substituted with from one to three
 fluorine atoms, $(C_1-C_6)alkoxy$ substituted with from one to
 three fluorine atoms, amino, phenyl, trihaloalkoxy,
 30 $(C_1-C_6)alkylamino$, $-\overset{\overset{O}{\parallel}}{C}NH-(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, $(C_1-C_6)alkyl-\overset{\overset{O}{\parallel}}{C}-$
 35 $-\overset{\overset{O}{\parallel}}{C}O-(C_1-C_6)alkyl$, $-\overset{\overset{O}{\parallel}}{C}H$, $-CH_2OR^{13}$, $NH(C_1-C_6)alkyl-$,
 $-\overset{\overset{O}{\parallel}}{N}HCH$, $-\overset{\overset{O}{\parallel}}{N}R^{24}C-(C_1-C_6)alkyl$ and $-\overset{\overset{O}{\parallel}}{N}HC-(C_1-C_6)alkyl$;
 40 one of R^5 and R^6 is hydrogen and the other is selected
 from hydroxymethyl, hydrogen, $(C_1-C_3)alkyl$, $(C_1-C_8)acyloxy-$
 $(C_1-C_3)alkyl$, $(C_1-C_8)alkoxymethyl$ and benzyloxymethyl;

-137-

R^7 and R^8 are independently selected from hydrogen, (C₁-C₃)alkyl and phenyl;

R^9 is selected from methyl, hydroxymethyl,

5 $\begin{array}{c} \text{O} \\ \parallel \\ \text{HC}- \end{array}$, $R^{14}R^{15}\text{NCO}_2\text{CH}_2-$, $R^{16}\text{OCO}_2\text{CH}_2-$, (C₁-C₄)alkyl-CO₂CH₂-, -CONR¹⁷R¹⁸,
 $R^{17}R^{18}\text{NCO}_2-$, $R^{19}\text{OCO}_2-$, C₆H₅CH₂CO₂CH₂-, C₆H₅CO₂CH₂-, (C₁-C₄)alkyl-
 CH(OH)-, C₆H₅CH(OH)-, C₆H₅CH₂CH(OH)-, CH₂halo, R²⁰SO₂OCH₂-, -CO₂R¹⁶
 and R²¹CO₂-;

10 R^{10} and R^{11} are independently selected from hydrogen, (C₁-C₃) alkyl and phenyl;

R^{12} is hydrogen, benzyl or a group of the formula



wherein m is an integer from zero to twelve, and any one of the carbon-carbon single bonds of (CH₂)_m, wherein both carbon atoms of such bond are bonded to each other and to another carbon atom of the (CH₂)_m chain, may optionally be replaced
 20 by a carbon-carbon double or triple bond, and any one of the carbon atoms of (CH₂)_m may optionally be substituted with R²³;

R¹³, R¹⁴, R¹⁵, R¹⁶, R¹⁷, R¹⁸, R¹⁹, R²⁰, R²¹ and R²⁴ are independently selected from hydrogen, (C₁-C₃)alkyl and phenyl;

25 R^{22} and R²³ are independently selected from hydrogen, hydroxy, halo, amino, carboxy, carboxy(C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₁-C₆)alkylamino, di-(C₁-C₆)alkylamino, (C₁-C₆)alkoxy, (C₁-C₆)-

30 $\begin{array}{c} \text{O} \\ \parallel \\ \text{alkyl-O-C-} \end{array}$, $\begin{array}{c} \text{O} \\ \parallel \\ (\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{alkyl-O-C-} \end{array}$ (C₁-C₆)alkyl, $\begin{array}{c} \text{O} \\ \parallel \\ (\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{alkyl-C-} \end{array}$,
 $\begin{array}{c} \text{O} \\ \parallel \\ (\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{alkyl-C-} \end{array}$ (C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-, $\begin{array}{c} \text{O} \\ \parallel \\ (\text{C}_1\text{-C}_6)\text{alkyl-C-} \end{array}$, (C₁-C₆)-

35 $\begin{array}{c} \text{O} \\ \parallel \\ \text{alkyl-C-} \end{array}$ (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₁-C₆) straight or branched alkyl, (C₃-C₇) cycloalkyl wherein one of the carbon atoms may optionally be replaced by nitrogen, oxygen or sulfur; aryl selected

-138-

from phenyl and naphthyl; heteroaryl selected from indanyl, thienyl, furyl, pyridyl, thiazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxazolyl, isoxazolyl, triazolyl, tetrazolyl and quinolyl; phenyl-(C₂-C₆)alkyl, benzhydryl and benzyl, wherein each of said aryl
 5 and heteroaryl groups and the phenyl moieties of said benzyl, phenyl-(C₂-C₆)alkyl and benzhydryl may optionally be substituted with one or two substituents independently selected from halo, nitro, (C₁-C₆)alkyl optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms, (C₁-
 10 C₆)alkoxy optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms,

trifluoromethyl, amino, (C₁-C₆)-alkylamino, (C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-C(=O),
 15 (C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-C(=O)-(C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-O-, (C₁-C₆)alkyl-
 20 C(=O)-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-, (C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-, (C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-(C₁-
 C₆)alkyl-, di-(C₁-C₆)alkylamino, -C(=O)NH-(C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₁-C₆)-
 25 alkyl-C(=O)NH-(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -NHCH(=O) and -NHC(=O)-(C₁-C₆)alkyl; and
 wherein one of the phenyl moieties of said benzhydryl may optionally be replaced by naphthyl, thienyl, furyl or pyridyl;

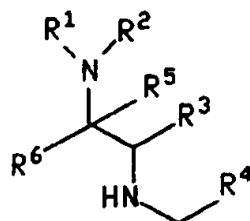
30 or R⁹, together with the carbon to which it is attached, the nitrogen of the pyrrolidine ring, the carbon to which R⁷ is attached and the carbon to which R⁵ and R⁶ are attached form a second pyrrolidine ring; with the proviso that when
 35 R⁹, together with the carbon to which it is attached, the nitrogen of the pyrrolidine ring, the carbon to which R⁷ is attached and the carbon to which R⁵ and R⁶ are attached, form a second pyrrolidine ring (thus forming a bicyclic structure containing a bridgehead nitrogen), either R¹² is absent or R¹² is present and the nitrogen of the second pyrrolidine ring
 40 is positively charged;

-139-

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt of such compound.

5. A method according to claim 1, wherein the compound administered is a compound of the formula

5

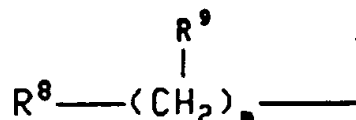


XII

10 wherein R¹ is hydrogen, (C₁-C₆) alkyl, a saturated (C₆-C₁₀) carbocyclic ring system containing two fused rings, a saturated (C₆-C₁₀) carbocyclic bridged ring system containing two rings, or benzyl wherein the phenyl moiety of said
 15 substituents independently selected from halo, (C₁-C₆) alkyl optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms and (C₁-C₂) alkoxy optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms;

R² is hydrogen, benzyl or a group of the formula

20

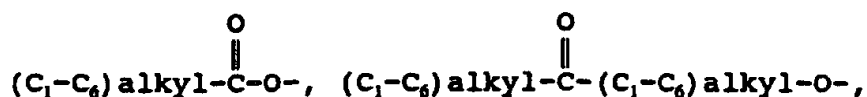


wherein m is an integer from zero to twelve, and any one of
 25 the carbon-carbon single bonds of (CH₂)_m, wherein both carbon atoms of such bond are bonded to each other and to another carbon atom of the (CH₂)_m chain, may optionally be replaced by a carbon-carbon double or triple bond, and any one of the carbon atoms of (CH₂)_m may optionally be substituted with R⁹;

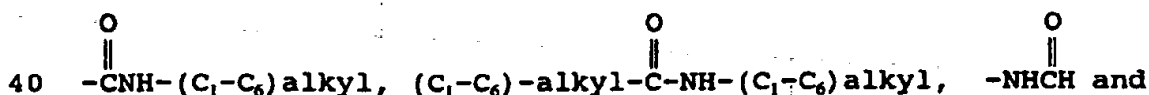
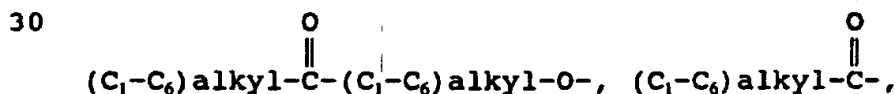
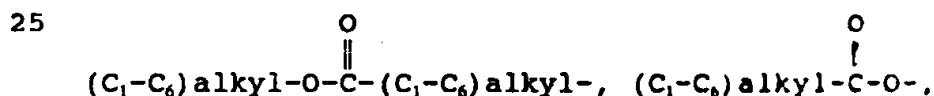
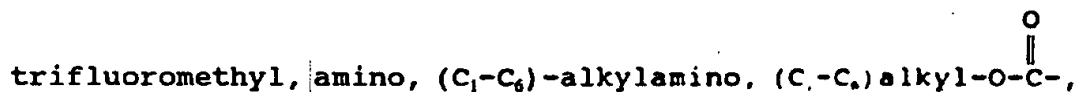
30 R⁸ and R⁹ are independently selected from hydrogen, hydroxy, halo, amino, carboxy, carboxy(C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₁-C₆)alkylamino, di-(C₁-C₆)alkylamino, (C₁-C₆)alkoxy,

35 (C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-C(=O)-, (C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-C(=O)-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-,

-140-



5 $(C_1-C_6)\text{alkyl}-\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}{\text{C}}-$, (C_1-C_6) straight or branched alkyl, (C_3-C_7) cycloalkyl wherein one of the carbon atoms may optionally be replaced by nitrogen, oxygen or sulfur; aryl selected from
 10 phenyl and naphthyl; heteroaryl selected from indanyl, thienyl, furyl, pyridyl, thiazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxazolyl, isoxazolyl, triazolyl, tetrazolyl and quinolyl; phenyl- (C_2-C_6) alkyl, benzhydryl and benzyl, wherein each of said aryl and heteroaryl groups and the phenyl moieties of said
 15 benzyl, phenyl- (C_2-C_6) alkyl and benzhydryl may optionally be substituted with one or two substituents independently selected from halo, nitro, (C_1-C_6) alkyl optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms, (C_1-C_6) alkoxy optionally substituted with from one to three
 20 fluorine atoms,



$-\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}{\text{N}}\text{HC-}(C_1-C_6)\text{alkyl};$ and wherein one of the phenyl moieties of
 45 said benzhydryl may optionally be replaced by naphthyl, thienyl, furyl or pyridyl;

-141-

or R¹ and R², together with the nitrogen to which they are attached, form a saturated or unsaturated monocyclic ring containing from three to eight carbon atoms, a fused bicyclic ring containing from six to ten carbon atoms, or a
 5 saturated bridged ring system containing from six to ten carbon atoms;

R⁴ is aryl selected from phenyl and naphthyl; heteroaryl selected from indanyl, thienyl, furyl, pyridyl, thiazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxazolyl, isoxazolyl, triazolyl, tetrazolyl
 10 and quinolyl; and cycloalkyl having from three to seven carbon atoms wherein one of said carbon atoms may optionally be replaced by nitrogen, oxygen or sulfur; wherein each of said aryl and heteroaryl groups may optionally be substituted with one or more substituents, and said (C₃-C₇)
 15 cycloalkyl may optionally be substituted with one, two or three substituents, each of said substituents being independently selected from halo, nitro, (C₁-C₆) alkyl optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms, (C₁-C₆) alkoxy optionally substituted with from one to
 20 three fluorine atoms, phenyl,

amino, (C₁-C₆) alkylamino, $\text{-}\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}\text{C-NH-(C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{)alkyl}$, $\text{(C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{)alkyl-}\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}\text{C-}$,

25 $\text{-}\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}\text{C-O-(C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{)alkyl}$, $\text{-}\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}\text{CH-}$, $\text{-CH}_2\text{OR}^{12}$, $\text{NH}_2\text{(C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{)alkyl-}$,

30 $\text{-NH}\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}\text{CH-}$, $\text{-NH}\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}\text{C-(C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{)alkyl}$, $\text{-NH}\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}\text{S-(C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{)alkyl}$ and

35 $\text{(C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{)alkyl-N-}\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}\text{S-(C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{)alkyl}$;

40 R³ is hydrogen, (C₃-C₈)cycloalkyl, (C₁-C₆) straight or branched alkyl or phenyl optionally substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from halo, (C₁-

-142-

C₆)alkyl optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms, and (C₁-C₆)alkoxy optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms;

R⁵ is hydrogen, (C₁-C₆)alkyl, or phenyl optionally substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from halo, (C₁-C₆)alkyl optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms and (C₁-C₆)alkoxy optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms;

R⁶ is selected from hydrogen, (C₁-C₆) straight or branched alkyl, (C₃-C₇) cycloalkyl wherein one of the carbon atoms may optionally be replaced by nitrogen, oxygen or sulfur; aryl selected from phenyl, biphenyl, indanyl and naphthyl; heteroaryl selected from thienyl, furyl, pyridyl, thiazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxazolyl, isoxazolyl, triazolyl, tetrazolyl and quinolyl; phenyl (C₂-C₆) alkyl, benzhydryl and benzyl, wherein each of said aryl and heteroaryl groups and the phenyl moieties of said benzyl, phenyl (C₂-C₆) alkyl and benzhydryl may optionally be substituted with one or more substituents independently selected from halo, nitro, (C₁-C₆) alkyl optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms, (C₁-C₆) alkoxy, trifluoromethyl, amino, trihaloalkoxy

(e.g., trifluoromethoxy), (C₁-C₆)alkylamino, (C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-C(=O)-,

(C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-C(=O)-(C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-O-,

(C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-, (C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-,

(C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-, di-(C₁-C₆)alkylamino,

-C(=O)NH-(C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)NH-(C₁-C₆)alkyl-, -NHCH(=O) and

-143-

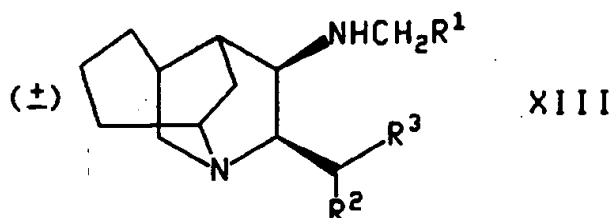
O
 \parallel
 $-\text{NHC}-(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)\text{alkyl}$; and wherein one of the phenyl moieties of
 said benzhydryl may optionally be replaced by naphthyl,
 5 thienyl, furyl or pyridyl; and

R^{12} is hydrogen, $(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_3)\text{alkyl}$ or phenyl;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt of such compound.

6. A method according to claim 1, wherein the compound administered is a compound of the formula

10



15 wherein R^1 is cycloalkyl having from five to seven carbon atoms, pyrrolyl, thienyl, pyridyl, phenyl or substituted phenyl, wherein said substituted phenyl is substituted with from one to three substituents independently selected from fluorine, chlorine, bromine, trifluoromethyl, alkyl having
 20 from one to three carbon atoms, alkoxy having from one to three carbon atoms, carboxy, alkoxycarbonyl having from one to three carbon atoms in the alkoxy moiety and benzyloxycarbonyl;

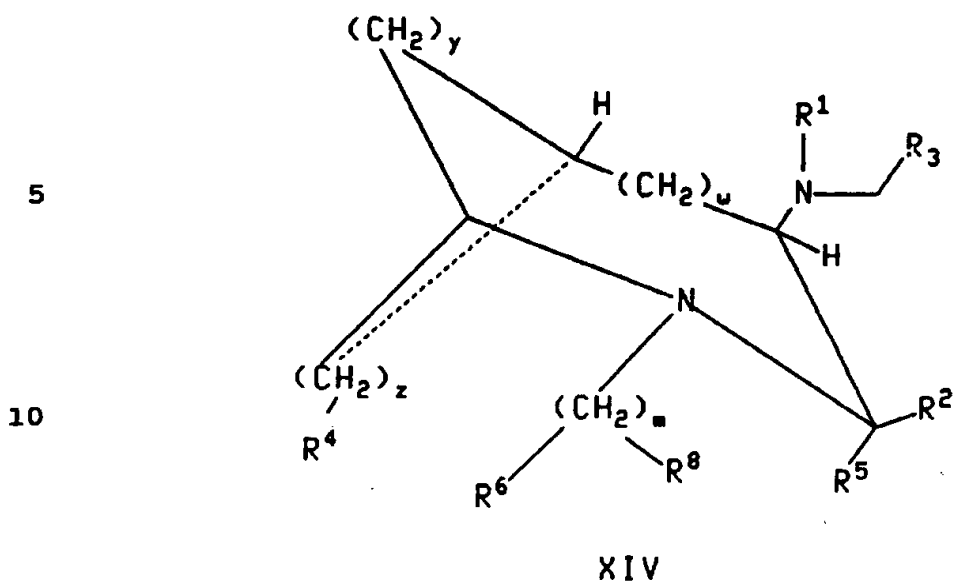
R^2 is furyl, thienyl, pyridyl, indolyl, biphenyl, phenyl
 25 or substituted phenyl, wherein said substituted phenyl is substituted with one or two substituents independently selected from fluorine, chlorine, bromine, trifluoromethyl, alkyl having from one to three carbon atoms, alkoxy having from one to three carbon atoms, carboxy, alkoxycarbonyl
 30 having from one to three carbon atoms in the alkoxy moiety and benzyloxycarbonyl; and

R^3 is thienyl, phenyl, fluorophenyl, chlorophenyl or bromophenyl;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt of such compound.

35 7. A method according to claim 1, wherein the compound administered is a compound of the formula

-144-



15 wherein m is an integer from 0 to 8, and any one of the carbon-carbon single bonds of $(CH_2)_m$, wherein both carbon atoms of such bond are bonded to each other and to another carbon in the $(CH_2)_m$ chain, may optionally be replaced by a carbon-carbon double bond or a carbon-carbon triple bond, and any one of the carbon atoms of said $(CH_2)_m$ may optionally be substituted with R^8 ;

w is an integer from 0 to 2;

y is an integer from 1 to 4;

25 z is an integer from 1 to 4, and wherein any one of the carbon atoms of said $(CH_2)_z$ may optionally be substituted with R^4 ;

R^1 is hydrogen or (C_1-C_3) alkyl optionally substituted with hydroxy, alkoxy or fluoro;

30 R^2 is a group selected from hydrogen, (C_1-C_6) straight or branched alkyl, (C_3-C_7) cycloalkyl wherein one of the carbon atoms may optionally be replaced by nitrogen, oxygen or sulfur; aryl selected from phenyl, indanyl, and naphthyl; heteroaryl selected from thienyl, furyl, pyridyl, thiazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxazolyl, isoxazolyl, triazolyl, tetrazolyl, and quinolyl; phenyl (C_2-C_6) alkyl, benzhydryl and benzyl, wherein one of the phenyl moieties of said benzhydryl may

35

-145-

optionally be replaced by naphthyl, thienyl, furyl or pyridyl and wherein each of said aryl and heteroaryl groups and the phenyl moieties of said benzyl, phenyl(C₂-C₆)alkyl and benzhydryl may optionally be substituted with one or
 5 more substituents independently selected from halo, nitro, (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₁-C₆)alkoxy, trifluoromethyl, amino,

(C₁-C₆)-alkylamino, (C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-C(=O)-, (C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-C(=O)-
 10 (C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-O-, (C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-
 15 (C₁-C₆)alkyl-O-, (C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-, (C₁-C₆)alkyl-C(=O)-
 (C₁-C₆)alkyl-, di-(C₁-C₆)alkylamino, -C(=O)NH-(C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₁-C₆)-
 20 alkyl-C(=O)NH-(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -NHCH(=O) and -NHC(=O)-(C₁-C₆)alkyl;

R³ is hydrogen, phenyl or (C₁-C₆)alkyl;

or R² and R⁵, together with the carbon to which they are attached, form a saturated carbocyclic ring having from 3 to
 25 7 carbon atoms wherein one of said carbon atoms may optionally be replaced by oxygen, nitrogen or sulfur;

R³ is aryl selected from phenyl, indanyl, and naphthyl; heteroaryl selected from thienyl, furyl, pyridyl, thiazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxazolyl, isoxazolyl, triazolyl, tetrazolyl
 30 and quinolyl; and cycloalkyl having 3 to 7 carbon atoms wherein one of said carbon atoms may optionally be replaced by nitrogen, oxygen or sulfur; wherein each of said aryl and heteroaryl groups may optionally be substituted with one or more substituents, and said (C₃-C₇) cycloalkyl may optionally
 35 be substituted with one or two substituents, each of said substituents being independently selected from halo, nitro, (C₁-C₆)alkyl optionally substituted with from one to three

-146-

fluorine atoms, (C₁-C₆)alkoxy optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms, trifluoromethyl, phenyl,

5 amino, (C₁-C₆)alkylamino, (C₁-C₆)dialkyl amino, $-\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}{\text{C}}-\text{NH}-(\text{C}_1-$

10 C₆)alkyl, (C₁-C₆)alkyl- $\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}{\text{C}}-\text{NH}-(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)$ alkyl, $-\text{NHCH}\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}$ and

$-\text{NHC}\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}-(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)$ alkyl;

R⁴ is independently selected from hydrogen, hydroxy,
15 halo, amino, oxo (=O), nitrile,
(C₁-C₆)alkylamino, di-(C₁-C₆)alkylamino, (C₁-C₆)alkoxy,

20 (C₁-C₆)alkyl-O- $\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}{\text{C}}-$, (C₁-C₆)alkyl-O- $\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}{\text{C}}-(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)$ alkyl,

(C₁-C₆)alkyl- $\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}{\text{C}}-\text{O}-$, (C₁-C₆)alkyl- $\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}{\text{C}}-(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)$ alkyl-O-,
hydroxy-(C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₁-C₆)alkoxy(C₁-C₆)alkyl,

25 (C₁-C₆)alkyl- $\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}{\text{C}}-$, (C₁-C₆)alkyl- $\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}{\text{C}}-(\text{C}_1-\text{C}_6)$ alkyl-, and the groups
set forth in the definition of R²;

30 R⁶ is NHCR^9 , NHCH_2R^9 , NHSO_2R^9 or one of the groups set
forth in any of the definitions of R², and R⁴;

R⁸ is oximino (=NOH) or one of the groups set forth in
any of the definitions of R², and R⁴;

35 R⁹ is (C₁-C₆)alkyl, hydrogen, phenyl or phenyl (C₁-
C₆)alkyl;

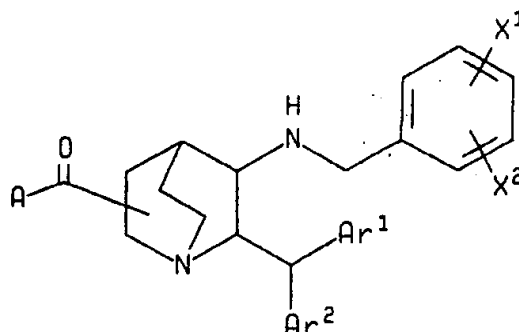
with the proviso that (a) when m is 0, R⁸ is absent and
R⁶ is hydrogen, (b) neither R⁴, R⁶, nor R⁸ can form, together
with the carbon to which it is attached, a ring with R⁵, and
(c) the sum of y and z must be less than 7;

40 or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

8. A method according to claim 1, wherein the
compound administered is a compound of the formula

-147-

5



10

XV

wherein X^1 is (C_1-C_5) alkoxy or halosubstituted (C_1-C_5) alkoxy;
 X^2 is hydrogen, halogen, (C_1-C_5) alkyl, (C_2-C_5) alkenyl,
 15 (C_2-C_5) alkynyl, (C_1-C_5) alkoxy, (C_1-C_5) alkylthio, (C_1-C_5) alkylsulfinyl, (C_1-C_5) alkylsulfonyl, halosubstituted (C_1-C_5) alkyl, halosubstituted (C_1-C_5) alkoxy, (C_1-C_5) alkylamino, dialkylamino having from 1 to 5 carbon atoms in each alkyl moiety, (C_1-C_5) alkylsulfonylamino (which may be substituted

20

by halogen), (C_1-C_5) alkyl-N- (C_1-C_5) alkylsulfonyl (which may be substituted by halogen in the alkylsulfonyl moiety), (C_1-C_5) alkanoylamino (which may be substituted by halogen) or

25

(C_1-C_5) alkyl-N- (C_1-C_5) alkanoyl (which may be substituted by halogen in the alkanoyl moiety);

30 Ar^1 and Ar_2 are each, independently, thienyl, phenyl, fluorophenyl, chlorophenyl or bromophenyl;

A is $Y-(CH_2)_m-CH(R^2)-(CH_2)_n-NR^1-$;

R^1 is hydrogen, (C_1-C_5) alkyl, benzyl or $-(CH_2)_p-Y$;

R^2 is hydrogen, (C_1-C_5) alkyl (which may be substituted by a substituent selected from the group consisting of hydroxy, amino, methylthio and mercapto), benzyl, 4-hydroxybenzyl, 3-indolylmethyl or $-(CH_2)_p-Y$;

35

Y is $-CN$, $-CH_2Z$ or $-COZ$;

-148-

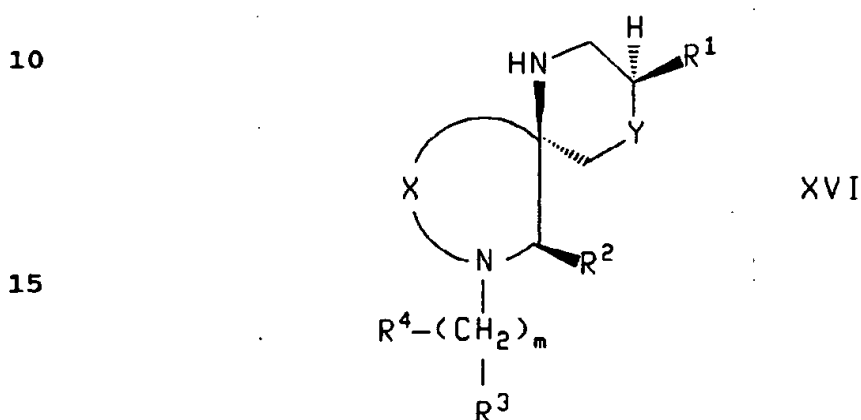
Z is hydroxy, amino, (C₁-C₃)alkoxy, (C₁-C₃)alkylamino or dialkylamino having from 1 to 5 carbon atoms in each alkyl moiety;

m, n and p are each, independently, 0, 1, 2 or 3; and

5 R¹ and R² may be connected to form a ring;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

9. A method according to claim 1, wherein the compound administered is a compound of the formula



wherein R¹ is phenyl optionally substituted with one or more
 20 substituents, preferably with from one to three
 substituents, independently selected from hydrogen, halo,
 nitro, (C₁-C₁₀) alkyl optionally substituted with from one to
 three fluorine atoms, (C₁-C₁₀) alkoxy optionally substituted
 with from one to three fluorine atoms, trifluoromethyl,
 25 hydroxy, phenyl, cyano, amino, (C₁-C₆)-alkylamino,

30 di-(C₁-C₆)alkylamino, $\text{-}\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}\text{C-NH-(C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{)alkyl,}$

35 $\text{(C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{)alkyl-}\overset{\text{O}}{\parallel}\text{C-NH-(C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{) alkyl,}$ hydroxy(C₁-C₄)alkyl,

40 $\text{-NHCH}_2\text{, -NHC-(C}_1\text{-C}_6\text{) alkyl, (C}_1\text{-C}_4\text{)alkoxy(C}_1\text{-C}_4\text{)alkyl, -S(O)}_v\text{-}$
 $\text{(C}_1\text{-C}_{10}\text{)-alkyl}$ wherein v is zero, one or two, $\text{-S(O)}_v\text{-aryl}$
 wherein v is zero, one or two, $\text{-SO}_2\text{NR}^4\text{R}^5$ wherein each
 of R⁴ and R⁵ is, independently, (C₁-C₆)alkyl, or R⁴ and R⁵,

-149-

together with the nitrogen to which they are attached, form a saturated ring containing one nitrogen and from 3 to 6

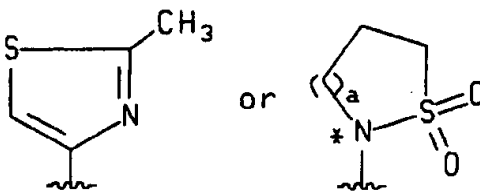
5 carbons, $(C_1-C_{10})alkyl-N-SO_2-(C_1-C_{10})alkyl$ wherein one or both of the alkyl moieties may optionally be substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms, $-N(SO_2-(C_1-C_{10})alkyl)_2$ and

10 $(C_1-C_{10})alkyl-N-SO_2-aryl$; and wherein the aryl moieties of

said $-S(O)_2-aryl$, $-O-aryl$ and $(C_1-C_{10})alkyl-N-SO_2-aryl$ are independently selected from phenyl and benzyl and may
15 optionally be substituted with from one to three substituents independently selected from $(C_1-C_4)alkyl$, $(C_1-C_4)alkoxy$ and halo;

or R^1 is phenyl substituted with a group having the formula

20



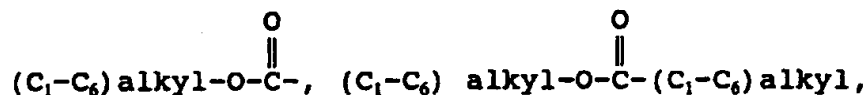
25 wherein a is 0, 1 or 2 and the asterisk represents a position meta to the point of attachment of R^1 ;

R^2 is selected from (C_1-C_6) straight or branched alkyl, (C_3-C_7) cycloalkyl wherein one of the carbon atoms may optionally be replaced by nitrogen, oxygen or sulfur; aryl
30 selected from biphenyl, phenyl, indanyl and naphthyl; heteroaryl selected from thienyl, furyl, pyridyl, thiazolyl, isothiazolyl, oxazolyl, isoxazolyl, triazolyl, tetrazolyl and quinolyl; phenyl (C_2-C_6) alkyl, benzhydryl and benzyl, wherein each of said aryl and heteroaryl groups and the
35 phenyl moieties of said benzyl, phenyl (C_2-C_6) alkyl and benzhydryl may optionally be substituted with one or more substituents, preferably with from one to three substituents, independently selected from halo, nitro,

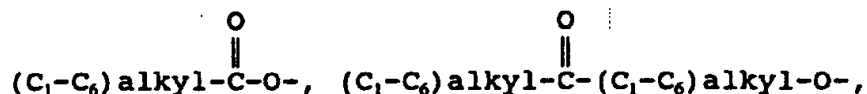
-150-

(C₁-C₁₀) alkyl optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms, (C₁-C₁₀) alkoxy optionally substituted with from one to three fluorine atoms, amino, hydroxy-(C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₁-C₆)alkoxy-(C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₁-C₆)-alkylamino,

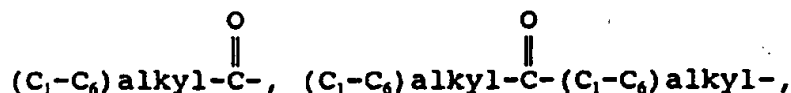
5



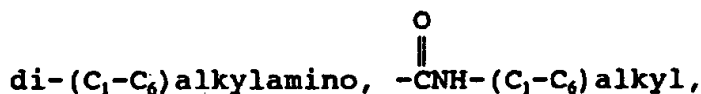
10



15



20



25

(C₁-C₆)-alkyl- $\overset{\overset{O}{\parallel}}{C}$ -NH-(C₁-C₆)alkyl, -NHCH and -NHC- $\overset{\overset{O}{\parallel}}{C}$ -(C₁-C₆)alkyl; and wherein one of the phenyl moieties of said benzhydryl may optionally be replaced by naphthyl, thienyl, furyl or pyridyl;

30

m is an integer from 0 to 8, and any one of the carbon-carbon single bonds of (CH₂)_m, wherein both carbon atoms of such bond are bonded to each other and to another carbon atom in the (CH₂)_m chain, may optionally be replaced by a carbon-carbon double bond or a carbon-carbon triple bond, and any one of the carbon atoms of said (CH₂)_m may optionally be substituted with R⁴;

35

R³ is selected from $\overset{\overset{O}{\parallel}}{N}HCR^8$, NHCH₂R⁸, SO₂R⁸, AR⁹, CO₂H and the radicals set forth in the definitions of R², R⁶ and R⁷;

A is CH₂, nitrogen, oxygen, sulfur or carbonyl;

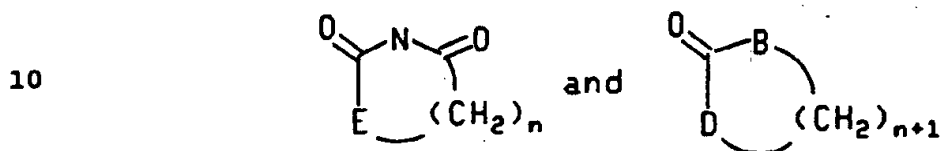
40

R⁸ is (C₁-C₆)alkyl, hydrogen, phenyl or phenyl (C₁-C₆)alkyl;

R⁴ is selected from oximino (=NOH) and the radicals set forth in the definitions of R², R⁶ and R⁷;

-151-

R⁹ is a monocyclic or bicyclic heterocycle selected from the group consisting of pyrimidinyl, benzoxazolyl, 2,3-dihydro-3-oxobenzisulfonazol-2-yl, morpholin-1-yl, thiomorpholin-1-yl, benzofuranyl, benzothienyl, indolyl, isoindolyl, isoquinolinyl, furyl, pyridyl, isothiazolyl, oxazolyl, triazolyl, tetrazolyl, quinolyl, thiazolyl, thienyl, and groups of the formulae



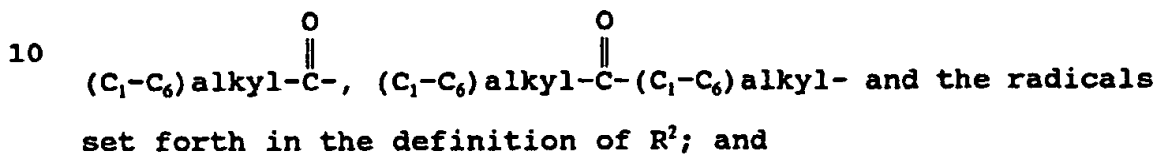
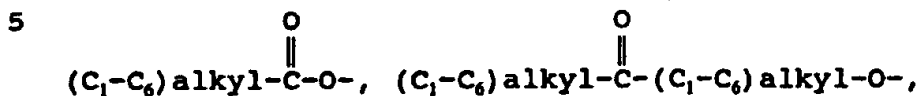
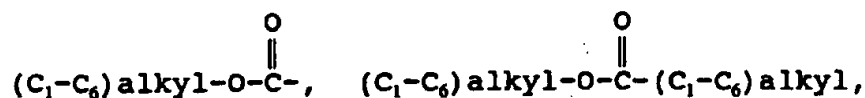
wherein B and D are selected from carbon, oxygen and nitrogen, and at least one of B and D is other than carbon; E is carbon or nitrogen; n is an integer from 1 to 5; any one of the carbon atoms of said (CH₂)_n and (CH₂)_{n+1} may be optionally substituted with (C₁-C₆)alkyl or (C₂-C₆) spiroalkyl; and either any one pair of the carbon atoms of said (CH₂)_n and (CH₂)_{n+1} may be bridged by a one or two carbon atom linkage, or any one pair of adjacent carbon atoms of said (CH₂)_n and (CH₂)_{n+1} may form, together with from one to three carbon atoms that are not members of the carbonyl containing ring, a (C₃-C₅) fused carbocyclic ring;

25 X is (CH₂)_q wherein q is two or three and wherein one of the carbon-carbon single bonds in said (CH₂)_q may optionally be replaced by a carbon-carbon double bond, and wherein any one of the carbon atoms of said (CH₂)_q may optionally be substituted with R⁶, and wherein any one of the carbon atoms of said (CH₂)_q may optionally be substituted with R⁷;

R⁶ and R⁷ are independently selected from hydrogen, hydroxy, halo, amino, oxo (=O), cyano, hydroxy-(C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₁-C₆)alkoxy-(C₁-C₆)alkyl, (C₁-C₆)alkylamino,

35 di-(C₁-C₆)alkylamino, (C₁-C₆)alkoxy, $\begin{array}{c} \text{O} \\ \parallel \\ -\text{C}-\text{OH} \end{array}$,

-152-



Y is $(CH_2)_z$ wherein z is zero or one;

15 with the proviso that: (a) when A is $-(CH_2)-$ or carbonyl, R^9 cannot be furyl, pyridyl, isothiazolyl, oxazolyl, triazolyl, tetrazolyl, quinolyl, thiazolyl or thienyl; (b) when m is zero, one of R^3 and R^4 is absent and the other is hydrogen; and (c) when R^6 or R^7 is attached to

20 a carbon atom of X that is adjacent to the ring nitrogen, then R^6 or R^7 , respectively, must be a substituent wherein the point of attachment is a carbon atom;

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt of such compound.

10. A method according to claim 2, wherein the

25 compound administered to said mammal is selected from the group consisting of:

(2S,3S)-3-(5-tert-butyl-2-methoxybenzyl)amino-2-(3-trifluoromethoxyphenyl)piperidine;

30 (2S,3S)-3-(2-isopropoxy-5-trifluoromethoxybenzyl)amino-2-phenyl-piperidine;

(2S,3S)-3-(2-ethoxy-5-trifluoromethoxybenzyl)amino-2-phenyl-piperidine;

35 (2S,3S)-3-(2-methoxy-5-trifluoromethoxybenzyl)amino-2-phenylpiperidine; *phenyl methyl*

(2S,3S)-3-(5-tert-butyl-2-trifluoromethoxybenzyl)amino-2-phenylpiperidine;

2-(diphenylmethyl)-N-(2-methoxy-5-trifluoromethoxyphenyl)methyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octan-3-amine;

40 (2S,3S)-3-[5-chloro-2-(2,2,2-trifluoroethoxy)-benzyl]amino-2-phenylpiperidine;

-153-

(2S,3S)-3-(5-tert-butyl-2-trifluoromethoxybenzyl) amino-2-phenylpiperidine;

(2S,3S)-3-(2-isopropoxy-5-trifluoromethoxybenzyl) amino-2-phenylpiperidine;

5 (2S,3S)-3-(2-difluoromethoxy-5-trifluoromethoxybenzyl)-amino-2-phenylpiperidine;

(2S,3S)-2-phenyl-3-[2-(2,2,2-trifluoroethoxybenzyl)-aminopiperidine;

10 (2S,3S)-2-phenyl-3-(2-trifluoromethoxybenzyl) aminopiperidine;

and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts of the foregoing compounds.

11. A method according to claim 2, wherein the compound administered to said mammal is selected from the group consisting of:

cis-3-(2-chlorobenzylamino)-2-phenylpiperidine;

cis-3-(2-trifluoromethylbenzylamino)-2-phenylpiperidine;

20 cis-3-(2-methoxybenzylamino)-2-(2-fluorophenyl)-piperidine;

cis-3-(2-methoxybenzylamino)-2-(2-chlorophenyl)-piperidine;

cis-3-(2-methoxybenzylamino)-2-(2-methylphenyl)-piperidine;

25 cis-3-(2-methoxybenzylamino)-2-(3-methoxyphenyl)-piperidine;

cis-3-(2-methoxybenzylamino)-2-(3-fluorophenyl)-piperidine;

30 cis-3-(2-methoxybenzylamino)-2-(3-chlorophenyl)-piperidine;

cis-3-(2-methoxybenzylamino)-2-phenylpiperidine;

cis-3-(2-methoxybenzylamino)-2-(3-methylphenyl)-piperidine ;

35 cis-3-(2-methoxybenzylamino)-2-(4-fluorophenyl)-piperidine;

cis-3-(2-methoxybenzylamino)-2-(3-thienyl)-piperidine;

-154-

- cis-3-(2-methoxybenzylamino)-2-phenylazacyclo-heptane;
3-(2-methoxybenzylamino)-4-methyl-2-phenylpiperidine;
3-(2-methoxybenzylamino)-5-methyl-2-phenylpiperidine;
3-(2-methoxybenzylamino)-6-methyl-2-phenylpiperidine;
5 (2S,3S)-3-(2-methoxybenzylamino)-2-phenylpiperidine;
(2S,3S)-1-(5-carboethoxypent-1-yl)-3-(2-methoxybenzyl-
amino)-2-phenylpiperidine;
(2S,3S)-1-(6-hydroxy-hex-1-yl)-3-(2-methoxybenzyl-
amino)-2-phenylpiperidine;
10 (2S,3S)-1-(4-hydroxy-4-phenylbut-1-yl)-3-(2-methoxy-
benzylamino)-2-phenylpiperidine;
(2S,3S)-1-(4-oxo-4-phenylbut-1-yl)-3-(2-methoxybenzyl-
amino)-2-phenylpiperidine;
(2S,3S)-1-(5,6-dihydroxyhex-1-yl)-3-(2-methoxybenzyl-
15 amino)-2-phenylpiperidine;
cis-3-(5-fluoro-2-methoxybenzylamino)-2-phenyl-
piperidine;
(2S,3S)-1-[4-(4-fluorophenyl)-4-oxobut-1-yl]-3-(2-
methoxybenzylamino)-2-phenylpiperidine;
20 (2S,3S)-1-[4-[4-fluorophenyl)-4-hydroxybut-1-yl]-3-(2-
methoxybenzylamino)-2-phenylpiperidine;
cis-3-(2-methoxy-5-methylbenzylamino)-2-phenyl-
piperidine;
(2S,3S)-1-(4-benzamidobut-1-yl)-3-(2-methoxybenzyl-
25 amino)-2-phenylpiperidine;
cis-3-(2-methoxynaphth-1-ylmethylamino)-2-phenyl-
piperidine;
(2S,3S)-3-(2-methoxybenzylamino)-1-(5-N-methyl-
carboxamidopent-1-yl)-2-phenylpiperidine;
30 (2S,3S)-1-(4-cyanobut-1-yl)-3-(2-methoxybenzylamino)-2-
phenylpiperidine;
(2S,3S)-1-[4-(2-naphthamido)but-1-yl]-3-(2-methoxy-
benzylamino)-2-phenylpiperidine;
(2S,3S)-1-(5-benzamidopent-1-yl)-3-(2-methoxybenzyl-
35 amino)-2-phenylpiperidine;

-155-

- (2S,3S)-1-(5-aminopent-1-yl)-3-(2-methoxybenzylamino)-2-phenylpiperidine;
- (2S,3S)-3-(5-chloro-2-methoxybenzylamino)-2-phenylpiperidine;
- 5 (2S,3S)-3-(2,5-dimethoxybenzylamino)-2-phenylpiperidine;
- cis-3-(3,5-difluoro-2-methoxybenzylamino)-2-phenylpiperidine;
- cis-3-(4,5-difluoro-2-methoxybenzylamino)-2-phenylpiperidine;
- 10 cis-3-(2,5-dimethoxybenzylamino)-1-[4-(4-fluorophenyl)-4-oxobut-1-yl]-2-phenylpiperidine;
- cis-3-(5-chloro-2-methoxybenzylamino)-1-(5,6-dihydroxyhex-1-yl)-2-phenylpiperidine;
- 15 cis-1-(5,6-dihydroxyhex-1-yl)-3-(2,5-dimethoxybenzylamino)-2-phenylpiperidine;
- cis-2-phenyl-3-[-2(prop-2-yloxy)benzylamino]piperidine;
- cis-3-(2,5-dimethoxybenzyl)amino-2-(3-methoxyphenyl)piperidine hydrochloride;
- 20 cis-3-(5-chloro-2-methoxybenzyl)amino-2-(3-methoxyphenyl)piperidine dihydrochloride;
- cis-3-(5-chloro-2-methoxybenzyl)amino-2-(3-chlorophenyl)piperidine dihydrochloride;
- 3-(2-methoxybenzylamino)-2,4-diphenylpiperidine;
- 25 cis-3-(2-methoxybenzylamino)-2-phenylpyrrolidine;
- (2S,3S)-3-(5-ethyl-2-methoxybenzyl)amino-2-phenylpiperidine;
- (2S,3S)-3-(5-n-butyl-2-methoxybenzyl)amino-2-phenylpiperidine;
- 30 (2S,3S)-3-(2-methoxy-5-n-propylbenzyl)amino-2-phenylpiperidine;
- (2S,3S)-3-(5-isopropyl-2-methoxybenzyl)amino-2-phenylpiperidine;
- (2S,3S)-3-(5-s-butyl-2-methoxybenzyl)amino-2-phenylpiperidine;
- 35 piperidine;

-156-

(2S,3S)-3-(5-t-butyl-2-methoxybenzyl)amino-2-phenylpiperidine;

(2S,3S)-3-(2-methoxy-5-phenylbenzyl)amino-2-phenylpiperidine;

5 and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts of the foregoing compounds.

12. A method according to claim 2, wherein the compound administered to said mammal is selected from the group consisting of:

10 2,4-dimethylthiazole-5-sulfonic acid [4-methoxy-3-((2S,3S)-2-phenylpiperidin-3-ylaminomethyl)phenyl]-methanamide;

N-(4,5-dimethylthiazol-2-yl)-N-[4-methoxy-3-((2S,3S)-2-phenylpiperidin-3-ylaminomethyl)phenyl]-methanesulfonamide;

15 {5-[(4,5-dimethylthiazol-2-yl)methylamino]-2-methoxybenzyl}-((2S,3S)-2-phenylpiperidin-3-yl)amine;

{5-(4,5-dimethylthiazol-2-ylamino)-2-methoxybenzyl}-((2S,3S)-2-phenylpiperidin-3-yl)amine;

20 4,5-dimethylthiazole-2-sulfonic acid methyl-[3-((2S,3S)-2-phenylpiperidin-3-ylaminomethyl)-4-trifluoromethoxyphenyl]-amide;

2,4-dimethylthiazole-5-sulfonic acid [4-isopropoxy-3-((2S,3S)-2-phenylpiperidin-3-ylaminomethyl)phenyl]-methanamide;

25 2,4-dimethylthiazole-5-sulfonic acid [4-isopropoxy-3-((2S,3S)-2-phenylpiperidin-3-ylaminomethyl)phenyl]-isopropylamide;

2,4-dimethylthiazole-5-sulfonic acid [4-methoxy-3-((2S,3S)-2-phenylpiperidin-3-ylaminomethyl)phenyl]-

30 isopropylamide;

2,4-dimethylthiazole-5-sulfonic acid [4-methoxy-3-((2S,3S)-2-phenylpiperidin-3-ylaminomethyl)phenyl]-isobutylamide;

35 2,4-dimethylthiazole-5-sulfonic acid [4-isopropoxy-3-((2S,3S)-2-phenylpiperidin-3-ylaminomethyl)phenyl]-isobutylamide;

-157-

and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts of the foregoing compounds.

13. A method of treating or preventing a disorder of the eye selected from glaucoma, ocular hypertension, miosis, hyperemia, excess lacrimation and breakdown of the blood aqueous barrier in a mammal, comprising administering to said mammal an amount of a compound selected from the group consisting of:

(2S,3S)-N-(5-isopropyl-2-methoxyphenyl)methyl-2-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octan-3-amine;

(2S,3S)-N-(5-tert-butyl-2-methoxyphenyl)methyl-2-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octan-3-amine;

(2S,3S)-N-(5-methyl-2-methoxyphenyl)methyl-2-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octan-3-amine;

(2S,3S)-N-(5-ethyl-2-methoxyphenyl)methyl-2-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octan-3-amine;

(2S,3S)-N-(5-isopropyl-2-methoxyphenyl)methyl-2-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octan-3-amine;

(2S,3S)-N-(5-sec-butyl-2-methoxyphenyl)methyl-2-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octan-3-amine; and

(2S,3S)-N-(5-n-propyl-2-methoxyphenyl)methyl-2-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octan-3-amine,

and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts of the foregoing compounds, that is effective in treating or preventing such disorder.

14. A method according to claim 3, wherein the compound administered to said mammal is selected from the group consisting of:

(3R,4S,5S,6S)-N,N-diethyl-5-(5-isopropyl-2-methoxybenzylamino)-6-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octane-3-carboxamide;

(3R,4S,5S,6S)-N,N-diethyl-5-(2,5-dimethoxybenzylamino)-6-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octane-3-carboxamide;

(3R,4S,5S,6S)-5-(5-isopropyl-2-methoxybenzylamino)-6-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octane-3-carboxylic acid;

-158-

- (3R,4S,5S,6S)-5-(2-methoxy-2-methylthiobenzylamino)-6-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octane-3-carboxylic acid;
(3R,4S,5S,6S)-5-(2,5-dimethoxybenzylamino)-6-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octane-3-carboxylic acid;
- 5 (3R,4S,5S,6S)-5-(2-methoxy-5-methylbenzylamino)-6-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octane-3-carboxylic acid;
(3R,4S,5S,6S)-5-(5-ethyl-2-methoxybenzylamino)-6-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octane-3-carboxylic acid;
(3R,4S,5S,6S)-5-(2-methoxy-5-n-propylbenzylamino)-6-
- 10 diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octane-3-carboxylic acid;
(3R,4S,5S,6S)-5-(5-sec-butyl-2-methoxybenzylamino)-6-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octane-3-carboxylic acid;
(3R,4S,5S,6S)-5-(5-N-methyl-methanesulfonylamino-2-
- 15 methoxybenzylamino)-6-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octane-3-carboxylic acid;
(3R,4S,5S,6S)-5-(2-methoxy-5-methylsulfinylbenzylamino)-6-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octane-3-carboxylic acid;
(3R,4S,5S,6S)-5-(2-methoxy-5-trifluoromethoxybenzyl-
- 20 amino)-6-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octane-3-carboxylic acid;
(3R,4S,5S,6S)-5-(2-methoxy-5-methylsulfonylbenzylamino)-6-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octane-3-carboxylic acid;
- 25 (3R,4S,5S,6S)-5-(5-dimethylamino-2-methoxybenzylamino)-6-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octane-3-carboxylic acid;
(3R,4S,5S,6S)-5-(5-isopropyl-2-methoxybenzylamino)-6-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octane-2-carboxylic acid;
- 30 (3R,4S,5S,6S)-5-(2-methoxy-5-methylthiobenzylamino)-6-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octane-2-carboxylic acid;
(3R,4S,5S,6S)-5-(2,5-dimethoxybenzylamino)-6-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octane-2-carboxylic acid;
(3R,4S,5S,6S)-5-(2-methoxy-5-methylbenzylamino)-6-
- 35 diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octane-2-carboxylic acid;

-159-

(3R,4S,5S,6S)-5-(5-ethyl-2-methoxybenzylamino)-6-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octane-2-carboxylic acid;

(3R,4S,5S,6S)-5-(2-methoxyl-5-n-propylbenzylamino)-6-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octane-2-carboxylic acid;

5 (3R,4S,5S,6S)-5-(5-sec-butyl-2-methoxybenzylamino)-6-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octane-2-carboxylic acid;

(3R,4S,5S,6S)-5-(5-N-methyl-methanesulfonylamino-2-methoxybenzyl-amino)-6-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octane-2-carboxylic acid;

10 (3R,4S,5S,6S)-5-(2-methoxy-5-methylsulfinylbenzyl-amino)-6-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octane-2-carboxylic acid;

(3R,4S,5S,6S)-5-(2-methoxy-5-trifluoromethoxybenzyl-amino)-6-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octane-2-carboxylic acid;

15 (3R,4S,5S,6S)-5-(2-methoxy-5-methylsulfonylbenzyl-amino)-6-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octane-2-carboxylic acid;

(3R,4S,5S,6S)-5-(5-dimethylamino-2-methoxybenzylamino)-6-diphenylmethyl-1-azabicyclo[2.2.2]octane-2-carboxylic acid;

20 and the pharmaceutically acceptable salts of the foregoing compounds.

15. A method of treating or preventing a disorder of the eye selected from glaucoma, ocular hypertension, miosis, hyperemia, excess lacrimation and breakdown of the blood aqueous barrier in a mammal, comprising administering to said mammal an amount of a compound that is an NK-1 receptor antagonist, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, that is effective in treating or preventing such disorder.

30 16. A method of treating or preventing a disorder of the eye selected from glaucoma, ocular hypertension, miosis, hyperemia, excess lacrimation and breakdown of the blood aqueous barrier in a mammal, comprising administering to said mammal an amount of a compound that is a substance P receptor antagonist, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt

-160-

thereof, that is effective in treating or preventing such disorder.

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No
PCT/IB 95/00811

A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER
IPC 6 A61K31/445 A61K31/435 A61K31/55 A61K31/40 A61K31/135
A61K31/675

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)
IPC 6 A61K

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practical, search terms used)

C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X	EUROPEAN JOURNAL OF PHARMACOLOGY, vol. 216, 1992 pages 327-329, Z. WANG ET AL. 'THE ELECTRICALLY EVOKED, TACHYKININ-MEDIATED CONTRACTILE RESPONSE OF THE ISOLATED RABBIT IRIS SPHINCTER MUSCLE INVOLVES NK1 RECEPTORS ONLY' see the whole document ---	1,2,15, 16
X	BRITISH JOURNAL OF PHARMACOLOGY, vol. 111, no. 1, January 1994 pages 179-184, Z. WANG ET AL. 'NON-SPECIFIC ACTIONS OF THE NON-PEPTIDE TACHYKININ RECEPTOR ANTAGONISTS, CP-96,345, RP67580 AND SR 48968, ON NEUROTRANSMISSION' see the whole document ---	1,2,15, 16

-/--

☒ Further documents are listed in the continuation of box C.

☒ Patent family members are listed in annex.

* Special categories of cited documents:

- *A* document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance
- *E* earlier document but published on or after the international filing date
- *L* document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)
- *O* document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means
- *P* document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed

T later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention

X document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone

Y document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art.

Z document member of the same patent family

Date of the actual completion of the international search

12 February 1996

Date of mailing of the international search report

23.02.96

Name and mailing address of the ISA
European Patent Office, P.B. 5818 Patentlaan 2
NL - 2280 HV Rijswijk
Tel. (+31-70) 340-2040, Tx. 31 651 epo nl,
Fax (+31-70) 340-3016

Authorized officer

Hoff, P

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Int. Patent Application No.

PCT/IB 95/00811

C.(Continuation) DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X	BIOCHEMICAL AND BIOPHYSICAL RESEARCH COMMUNICATIONS, vol. 178, no. 1, 1991 pages 297-301, R. HAKANSON ET AL. 'COMPARISON OF SPANTIDE II AND CP-96,345 FOR BLOCKAGE OF TACHYKININ-EVOKED CONTRACTIONS OF SMOOTH MUSCLE' see the whole document ---	1,2,15, 16
X	BRITISH JOURNAL OF PHARMACOLOGY, vol. 107, 1992 pages 762-765, Z. WANG ET AL. 'CP-96,345, A SELECTIVE TACHYKININ NK1 RECEPTOR ANTAGONIST, HAS NON-SPECIFIC ACTIONS ON NEUROTRANSMISSION' see the whole document ---	1,2,15, 16
X	SCIENCE, vol. 214, 1981 pages 1029-1031, G. HOLMDAHL ET AL. 'SUBSTANCE P ANTAGONIST, (D-PRO, D-TRP)SP, INHIBITS INFLAMMATORY RESPONSES IN THE RABBIT EYE' cited in the application see the whole document ---	15,16
Y	see the whole document ---	1-4,6-8, 10-14
X	JOURNAL OF IMMUNOLOGY, vol. 135, no. 2, 1985 pages 812S-815S, B. PERNOW 'ROLE OF TACHYKININS IN NEUROGENIC INFLAMMATION' see abstract see page 814S ---	15,16
Y	see page 814S ---	1-4,6-8, 10-14
X	FERNSTRÖM FOUNDATION SERIES, vol. 6, 1985 pages 91-96, R. HAKANSON ET AL. 'TACHYKININ ANTAGONISTS SUPPRESS RESPONSE TO OCULAR INJURY IN THE RABBIT' see the whole document ---	15,16
Y	see the whole document ---	1-4,6-8, 10-14
Y	EP,A,0 610 021 (PFIZER INC.) 10 August 1994 see page 2, line 1 - line 17 see page 35, line 48 - page 36, line 43; claims ---	1-4,6-8, 10,11, 13,14

-/--

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Int. Application No.
PCT/IB 95/00811

C.(Continuation) DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT		
Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
P,Y	WO,A,95 07908 (PFIZER INC.) 23 March 1995 cited in the application see abstract see page 1, line 1 - line 18; claims ---	1,2,12
Y	WO,A,94 08997 (PFIZER INC.) 28 April 1994 cited in the application see abstract see page 1, line 1 - line 14; claims ---	1
Y	WO,A,94 10170 (PFIZER INC.) 11 May 1994 cited in the application see abstract see page 1, line 1 - line 14; claims ---	1
P,Y	WO,A,94 26740 (PFIZER INC.) 24 November 1994 cited in the application see abstract see page 1, line 1 - line 11; claims ---	1
P,Y	WO,A,95 07886 (PFIZER INC.) 23 March 1995 cited in the application see abstract see page 1, line 1 - line 9; claims ---	1
X	EP,A,0 533 280 (GLAXO GROUP LIMITED) 24 March 1993 see abstract see page 17, line 25 - line 30; claims ---	1,2
X	WO,A,94 16697 (RHONE-POULENC RORER) 4 August 1994 see abstract see page 1, line 26 - page 2, line 8 see page 39, line 20 - page 40, line 3 see page 48, line 1 - line 16; claims -----	1,2,11

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.

PCT/IB 95/00811

Box I Observations where certain claims were found unsearchable (Continuation of item 1 of first sheet)

This international search report has not been established in respect of certain claims under Article 17(2)(a) for the following reasons:

1. ☒ Claims Nos.:
because they relate to subject matter not required to be searched by this Authority, namely:
Please see enclosed form!
2. ☒ Claims Nos.:
because they relate to parts of the international application that do not comply with the prescribed requirements to such an extent that no meaningful international search can be carried out, specifically:
Please see enclosed form!
3. ☐ Claims Nos.:
because they are dependent claims and are not drafted in accordance with the second and third sentences of Rule 6.4(a).

Box II Observations where unity of invention is lacking (Continuation of item 2 of first sheet)

This International Searching Authority found multiple inventions in this international application, as follows:

Please see enclosed information!

1. ☐ As all required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this international search report covers all searchable claims.
2. ☐ As all searchable claims could be searched without effort justifying an additional fee, this Authority did not invite payment of any additional fee.
3. ☐ As only some of the required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this international search report covers only those claims for which fees were paid, specifically claims Nos.:
4. ☒ No required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant. Consequently, this international search report is restricted to the invention first mentioned in the claims; it is covered by claims Nos.:

1,15,16 partly; 2-4,6-8,10-14 completely

Remark on Protest

- ☐ The additional search fees were accompanied by the applicant's protest.
- ☐ No protest accompanied the payment of additional search fees.

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No. PCT/IB 95/00811

FURTHER INFORMATION CONTINUED FROM PCT/ISA/210

LACK OF UNITY OF INVENTION

The problem the application tries to solve is to treat or prevent a disorder of the eye (glaucoma, ocular hypertension, miosis, excess of lacrimation, hyperemia and breakdown of the blood aqueous barrier).

The proposed solution is to use substance P/NK-1 receptor antagonists especially

- compounds of formulas Ia, Ib, Ic, Id, Ie (with $P=NR_2$), X, XI, XIII, XIV, XV, XVII, XVIII, XIX, XXI characterised by an arylmethylaniline moiety attached to a saturated aminoheterocyclic ring
- ethylene diamine compounds such as described by the general formula XII
- spiroazacyclic compounds such as described by the general formula XVI
- compounds of formulas Ie (with $P=O$), XX characterised by an arylmethyloxy moiety attached to a saturated aminoheterocyclic ring
- compounds of formula Ie (with $P=S, SO, SO_2$)

Their pharmacological properties (substance P/NK-1 antagonists) represent the technical features which may a priori, unify the different groups of compounds.

The documents: -Science, vol. 214, 1981, p. 1029-1031
-the J. of Immunol., vol. 135, 1985, p. 8125-8155
-Fernstr. Found. Series, vol. 6, 1985, p. 91-96

describe substance P receptor antagonists which inhibit the response to ocular trauma (miosis, hyperemia, breakdown of the blood-aqueous barrier, ocular hypertension).

Furthermore, documents - Europ. J. Pharmacol., vol. 216, 1992, p. 327-329
- Br. J. Pharmacol., vol. 111, 1/94, p. 179-184
- Br. J. Pharmacol., vol. 107, 1992, p. 762-765
- Biochem. Biophys. Res. Comm., 1991, p. 297-301

disclose the antimiotic activity of an substance P/NK-1 receptor antagonist: CP-96345.

Because a solution based on technical features identical to those forwarded in the present application (see page 1, lines 1-17) has already been disclosed (see cited documents above), these technical features proposed in the present application cannot be accepted as special technical features involved in the technical relationship among the different inventions. As no other special technical features can be distinguished which could fulfil this requirement in the light of the prior art, there is no single inventive concept underlying the plurality of different inventions of the present application. (see rule 13.1 PCT).

Consequently there is lack of unity a posteriori and the different inventions not belonging to a common inventive concept (in the light of the prior art), are formulated as the different subjects in the communication pursuant to Art. 17(3)(a)PCT.

./.

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No. PCT/IB 95/00811

FURTHER INFORMATION CONTINUED FROM PCT/ISA/210

Furthermore, searching this plurality of different subjects would have caused "major additional searching efforts".

1. Claims searched: 1,15,16 (partially)
2-4,6-8,10-14 (completely)
Use of compounds of formulas Ia, Ib, Ic, Id, Ie (P=NK2), X, XI, XIII, XIV, XV, XVII, XVIII, XIX, XXI for treating a disorder of the eye.
2. Claims not searched: 1,15,16 (partially)
5 (completely)
Use of compounds of formula XII for treating a disorder of the eye
3. Claims not searched: 1,15,16 (partially)
9 (completely)
Use of compounds of formula XVI for treating a disorder of the eye
4. Claims not searched: 1,15,16 (partially)
Use of compounds of formulas Ie (P=O), XX for treating a disorder of the eye
5. Claims not searched: 1,15,16 (partially)
Use of compounds of formula Ie (P=S, SO, SO2) for treating a disorder of the eye.

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No. PCT/IB 95/00811

FURTHER INFORMATION CONTINUED FROM PCT/ISA/210

INCOMPLETE SEARCH

Claims searched completely: 10-14
Claims searched incompletely: 1-4,6-8,15-16

A compound cannot be sufficiently characterised by its pharmacological profile or its mode of action as it is done by expressions like "substance P receptor antagonists" or "NK-1 receptor antagonists".

In view of the large number of compounds which are defined by the general formulas of claims 1-4,6-8, the search was limited to the inventive part of the molecules and to the compounds specifically mentioned in the description and in the claims (PCT: Art. 6; Guidelines ... Part B, Chapt. II.7 last sentence and Chapt. III, 3.7).

Remark: Although claims 1-16 are directed to a method of treatment of the human/animal body the search has been carried out and based on the alleged effects of the compound/composition

INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Information on patent family members

International Application No

PC1/IB 95/00811

Patent document cited in search report	Publication date	Patent family member(s)	Publication date
EP-A-610021	10-08-94	US-A- 5340826	23-08-94
WO-A-9507908	23-03-95	AU-B- 7082194 FI-A- 944310	03-04-95 18-03-95
WO-A-9408997	28-04-94	JP-A- 6135963 AU-B- 5165393 EP-A- 0665844 FI-A- 934626 HU-A- 65133	17-05-94 09-05-94 09-08-95 22-04-94 28-04-94
WO-A-9410170	11-05-94	JP-A- 6135964 AU-B- 5141293 CA-A- 2146007 EP-A- 0665843 FI-A- 934752 HU-A- 65831	17-05-94 24-05-94 11-05-94 09-08-95 29-04-94 28-07-94
WO-A-9426740	24-11-94	AU-B- 6691094 CA-A- 2161886 FI-A- 942314	12-12-94 24-11-94 20-11-94
WO-A-9507886	23-03-95	NONE	
EP-A-533280	24-03-93	AU-B- 657996 AU-B- 2458392 CA-A- 2078578 JP-A- 6107563 US-A- 5360820 ZA-A- 9207156	30-03-95 25-03-93 21-03-93 19-04-94 01-11-94 18-03-94
WO-A-9416697	04-08-94	FR-A- 2700472 AU-B- 5862794 BE-A- 1006705 CA-A- 2152401 EP-A- 0680323 GB-A- 2274777 LU-A- 88442 NO-A- 952828 PT-A- 101444	22-07-94 15-08-94 22-11-94 04-08-94 08-11-95 10-08-94 03-10-94 17-07-95 31-10-94